



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

|   |           |  |
|---|-----------|--|
| <b>(51) International Patent Classification:</b><br><b>C07D 239/94, A61K 31/517,</b><br><b>A61P 35/00, C07D 215/54,</b><br><b>C07D 401/12, C07D 405/12,</b><br><b>C07D 413/12</b>   | <b>A1</b> | <b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 00/55141</b><br><b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 21 September 2000 (21.09.2000) |
| <b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/EP00/02228<br><b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 14 March 2000 (14.03.2000)<br><b>(30) Priority Data:</b><br>199 11 509.5 15 March 1999 (15.03.1999) DE<br><b>(60) Parent Application or Grant</b><br>BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM PHARMA KG [/];<br>O. HIMMELSBACH, Frank [/]; O. LANGKOPF, Elke [/];<br>O. BLECH, Stefan [/]; O. JUNG, Birgit [/]; O. METZ, Thomas<br>[/]; O. SOLCA, Flavio [/]; O. HIMMELSBACH, Frank [/];<br>O. LANGKOPF, Elke [/]; O. BLECH, Stefan [/]; O. JUNG,<br>Birgit [/]; O. METZ, Thomas [/]; O. SOLCA, Flavio [/];<br>O. LAUDIEN, Dieter ; O.   |           | <b>Published</b>   |
| <b>(54) Title: BICYCLIC HETEROCYCLES, PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING THESE COMPOUNDS, AND PROCESSES FOR PREPARING THEM</b><br><b>(54) Titre: HETEROCYCLES BICYCLIQUES, COMPOSITIONS PHARMACEUTIQUES CONTENANT CES COMPOSES, UTILISATIONS ET PROCEDES DE PREPARATION DE CES DERNIERS</b>   |           |  |
| <b>(57) Abstract</b><br><p>The present invention relates to bicyclic heterocyclic compounds of general formula (I), wherein R<sub>1a</sub> to R<sub>1d</sub>, A to D and X are defined as in claims 1 to 8, the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof, particularly the physiologically acceptable salts thereof with inorganic or organic acids or bases which have valuable pharmacological properties, particularly an inhibitory effect on signal transduction mediated by tyrosine kinases, their use in treating diseases, particularly tumour diseases, diseases of the lung and airways and the preparation thereof.</p>   |           |  |
| <b>(57) Abrégé</b><br><p>La présente invention concerne des composés hétérocycliques bicycliques de formule (I) dans laquelle R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>1b</sub>, R<sub>1c</sub> et R<sub>1d</sub>, A, B, C et D ainsi que X sont tels que définis dans les revendications 1 à 8, leurs tautomères, leurs stéréoisomères et leurs sels, plus particulièrement les sels physiologiquement acceptables de ces derniers associés à des acides ou des bases organiques ou inorganiques qui possèdent des propriétés pharmacologiques intéressantes, plus spécifiquement un effet inhibiteur sur la transduction du signal assisté par des tyrosine kinases, leur utilisation dans le traitement des maladies et plus particulièrement des maladies tumorales, des maladies pulmonaires et des voies aériennes ainsi que la préparation de ces composés.</p> |           |  |

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

|   |  |   |   |
|---|--|---|---|
| (51) International Patent Classification <sup>7</sup> :<br>C07D 239/94, 215/54, 401/12, 413/12,<br>405/12, A61K 31/517, A61P 35/00  |  | A1  | (11) International Publication Number: WO 00/55141<br>(43) International Publication Date: 21 September 2000 (21.09.00) |
| (21) International Application Number: PCT/EP00/02228<br>(22) International Filing Date: 14 March 2000 (14.03.00)<br>(30) Priority Data:<br>199 11 509.5 15 March 1999 (15.03.99) DE<br>(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):<br>BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM PHARMA KG [DE/DE];<br>D-55216 Ingelheim/Rhein (DE).<br>(72) Inventors; and<br>(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): HIMMELSBACH, Frank<br>[DE/DE]; Ahornweg 16, D-88441 Mittelbiberach (DE).<br>LANGKOPF, Elke [DE/DE]; Im Schloss 3, D-88447<br>Warthausen (DE). BLECH, Stefan [DE/DE]; Müllerweg<br>9, D-88447 Warthausen (DE). JUNG, Birgit [DE/DE];<br>Mühlstrasse 23, D-55270 Schwabenheim (DE). METZ,<br>Thomas [DE/AT]; Traungasse 6/5, A-1030 Vienna (AT).<br>SOLCA, Flavio [CH/AT]; Fimbingergasse 1/9, A-1230<br>Vienna (AT).<br>(74) Agent: LAUDIEN, Dieter; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH, B<br>Patente, D-55216 Ingelheim/Rhein (DE). |  | (81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG,<br>BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, EE,<br>ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP,<br>KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA,<br>MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU,<br>SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG,<br>US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE,<br>LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM,<br>AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT,<br>BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU,<br>MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM,<br>GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).<br><br>Published<br>With international search report.<br>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the<br>claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of<br>amendments. |   |
| (54) Title: BICYCLIC HETEROCYCLES, PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING THESE COMPOUNDS, AND<br>PROCESSES FOR PREPARING THEM  |  |   |   |
| <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>(I)</p> </div>   |  |   |   |
| (57) Abstract<br><br>The present invention relates to bicyclic heterocyclic compounds of general formula (I), wherein R <sub>a</sub> to R <sub>d</sub> , A to D and X are defined as in claims 1 to 8, the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof, particularly the physiologically acceptable salts thereof with inorganic or organic acids or bases which have valuable pharmacological properties, particularly an inhibitory effect on signal transduction mediated by tyrosine kinases, their use in treating diseases, particularly tumour diseases, diseases of the lung and airways and the preparation thereof.  |  |   |   |

*FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY*

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

|    |                          |    |  |    |  |    |                          |
|----|--------------------------|----|--|----|--|----|--------------------------|
| AL | Albania                  | ES | Spain                                    | LS | Lesotho                                      | SI | Slovenia                 |
| AM | Armenia                  | FI | Finland                                  | LT | Lithuania                                    | SK | Slovakia                 |
| AT | Austria                  | FR | France                                   | LU | Luxembourg                                   | SN | Senegal                  |
| AU | Australia                | GA | Gabon                                    | LV | Latvia                                       | SZ | Swaziland                |
| AZ | Azerbaijan               | GB | United Kingdom                           | MC | Monaco                                       | TD | Chad                     |
| BA | Bosnia and Herzegovina   | GE | Georgia                                  | MD | Republic of Moldova                          | TG | Togo                     |
| BB | Barbados                 | GH | Ghana                                    | MG | Madagascar                                   | TJ | Tajikistan               |
| BE | Belgium                  | GN | Guinea                                   | MK | The former Yugoslav<br>Republic of Macedonia | TM | Turkmenistan             |
| BF | Burkina Faso             | GR | Greece                                   | ML | Mali   | TR | Turkey                   |
| BG | Bulgaria                 | HU | Hungary                                  | MN | Mongolia                                     | TT | Trinidad and Tobago      |
| BJ | Benin                    | IE | Ireland                                  | MR | Mauritania                                   | UA | Ukraine                  |
| BR | Brazil                   | IL | Israel                                   | MW | Malawi                                       | UG | Uganda                   |
| BY | Belarus                  | IS | Iceland                                  | MX | Mexico                                       | US | United States of America |
| CA | Canada                   | IT | Italy                                    | NE | Niger  | UZ | Uzbekistan               |
| CF | Central African Republic | JP | Japan                                    | NL | Netherlands                                  | VN | Viet Nam                 |
| CG | Congo                    | KE | Kenya                                    | NO | Norway                                       | YU | Yugoslavia               |
| CH | Switzerland              | KG | Kyrgyzstan                               | NZ | New Zealand                                  | ZW | Zimbabwe                 |
| CI | Côte d'Ivoire            | KP | Democratic People's<br>Republic of Korea | PL | Poland                                       |    |                          |
| CM | Cameroon                 | KR | Republic of Korea                        | PT | Portugal                                     |    |                          |
| CN | China                    | KZ | Kazakhstan                               | RO | Romania                                      |    |                          |
| CU | Cuba                     | LC | Saint Lucia                              | RU | Russian Federation                           |    |                          |
| CZ | Czech Republic           | LI | Liechtenstein                            | SD | Sudan  |    |                          |
| DE | Germany                  | LK | Sri Lanka                                | SE | Sweden                                       |    |                          |
| DK | Denmark                  | LR | Liberia                                  | SG | Singapore                                    |    |                          |
| EE | Estonia                  |    |  |    |  |    |                          |

**D scription**

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

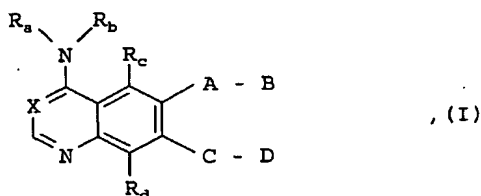
50

55

- 1 -

BICYCLIC HETEROCYCLES, PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING THESE COMPOUNDS,  
AND PROCESSES FOR PREPARING THEM

The present invention relates to bicyclic heterocyclic compounds of general formula



the tautomers, the stereoisomers and the salts thereof, particularly the physiologically acceptable salts thereof with inorganic or organic acids or bases which have valuable pharmacological properties, particularly an inhibiting effect on the signal transduction mediated by tyrosine kinases, their use in treating diseases, particularly tumoral diseases, diseases of the lungs and respiratory tract and the preparation thereof.

In the above general formula I

$R_a$  denotes a hydrogen atom or a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

$R_b$  denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom,

a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy,  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{4-6}$ -cycloalkoxy,  $C_{2-5}$ -alkenyl or  $C_{2-5}$ -alkynyl group,

an aryl, aryloxy, arylmethyl or arylmethoxy group,

a C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkenyloxy or C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkynyloxy group, whilst the unsaturated moiety may not be linked to the oxygen atom,

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylsulphenyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylsulphinyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylsulphonyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylsulphonyloxy, trifluoromethylsulphenyl, trifluoromethylsulphinyl or trifluoromethylsulphonyl group,

a methyl or methoxy group substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine atoms,

an ethyl or ethoxy group substituted by 1 to 5 fluorine atoms,

a cyano or nitro group or an amino group optionally substituted by one or two C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups, whilst the substituents may be identical or different,

or R<sub>1</sub> together with R<sub>2</sub>, if they are bound to adjacent carbon atoms, denote a -CH=CH-CH=CH, -CH=CH-NH or -CH=N-NH group and

R<sub>3</sub> denotes a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, trifluoromethyl or C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group,

R<sub>c</sub> and R<sub>d</sub>, which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine or chlorine atom, a methoxy group or a methyl group optionally substituted by a methoxy, dimethylamino, diethylamino, pyrrolidino, piperidino or morpholino group,

X denotes a methine group substituted by a cyano group or a nitrogen atom,

5  
10 A denotes an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -O-C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkylene,  
-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>4-7</sub>-cyclo-  
alkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloal-  
kylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst the oxygen atom of the  
abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic  
heteroaromatic ring,

15 an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or  
R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinafter defined and  
the oxygen atom of the abovementioned -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene groups in  
20 each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

25 an -O-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted from position 2  
onwards by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-  
(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piper-  
zino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino group and the oxygen atom of  
the abovementioned -O-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked  
to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

30 a -C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group,

35 an -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-  
C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or  
-NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst  
the -NR<sub>4</sub>- moiety of the abovementioned groups in each case is  
linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring, and

40 R<sub>4</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group,

45 an oxygen atom, this being linked to a carbon atom of the  
group B, or

a NR<sub>4</sub> group, the latter being linked to a carbon atom of the  
group B and R<sub>4</sub> being as hereinbefore defined,

50 B denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub>, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> or  
(R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein in each case the alkylene

moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst

R<sub>5</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group which may be substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>) or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>) group,

a C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkyl group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino or di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino group or by a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group, whilst in the abovementioned 6- to 7-membered alkyleneimino groups in each case a methylene group in the 4 position may be replaced by an oxygen or sulphur atom, by a sulphinyl, sulphonyl, imino or N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-imino group,

a C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl or C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl group,

R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub>, which may be identical or different, in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

a C<sub>1-8</sub>-alkyl group which may be substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino or di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino group or by a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group, whilst in the abovementioned 6- to 7-membered alkyleneimino groups in each case a methylene group in the 4 position may be replaced by an oxygen or sulphur atom, by a sulphinyl, sulphonyl, imino or N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-imino group,

a C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkyl group optionally substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

a C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkenyl or C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkynyl group, whilst the unsaturated moiety may not be linked to the oxygen atom,



5 a C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or R<sub>3</sub>CO-O-(R<sub>6</sub>CR<sub>7</sub>) group, whilst

10 R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, which may be identical or different, in each case denote a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group and

15 R<sub>3</sub> denotes a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy or C<sub>5-7</sub>-cycloalkoxy group,

and R<sub>5</sub> denotes a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, aryl or aryl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group,

20 a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>), (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>), R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

25 a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>OCO group and an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

30 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>), (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>), R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined and

40 R<sub>10</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, formyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylcarbonyl or C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylsulphonyl group,

45 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group and an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>10</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in  
each case in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis-  
10  $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in  
the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  
 $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group and is  
additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by one or two  
20  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  
 $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore  
defined,

25 a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted in  
each case by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -al-  
kyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  
 $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore  
defined,

30 a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted by  
two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and  
an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

35 a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substi-  
tuted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the above-  
mentioned 5 to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally  
substituted at a carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  
40  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  
 $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$   
to  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

45 a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substi-  
tuted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the above-  
mentioned 5 to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally  
substituted at carbon atoms by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl  
50 groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group  
wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

5

10

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15

20

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

25

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 to 4  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups,

30

35

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups in each case are linked to a carbon atom of the group A,

40

an  $R_{11}NR_5$  group wherein  $R_5$  is as hereinbefore defined and

$R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-4-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-5-yl group optionally substituted by one or two methyl groups,

45

or A and B together denotes a hydrogen, fluorine or chlorine atom,

50

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkoxy group,

55

5 a C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 onwards  
by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-al-  
10 kyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpho-  
lino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino,  
homopiperazino, 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-homopiperazino or 1-imidazolyl  
group,

15 a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by a pyrrolidinyl,  
piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1  
position by the group R<sub>10</sub>, whilst R<sub>10</sub> is as hereinbefore de-  
20 fined,

a C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO,  
(R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>) or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>8</sub>) group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>8</sub> are as  
25 hereinbefore defined,

a C<sub>1-7</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>1-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group,

30 an amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino,  
piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino,  
piperazino, 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino or  
4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-homopiperazino group,

35 a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2  
methyl groups,

40 C denotes an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -O-C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-al-  
kylene-C<sub>1-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or  
-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>1-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst  
the oxygen atom of the abovementioned group in each case is  
45 linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

50 an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or  
R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined and  
the oxygen atom of the abovementioned-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene groups in  
each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

an -O-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino group and the oxygen atom of the abovementioned-O-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

a -C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group,

an -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst the -NR<sub>4</sub>- moiety of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring and R<sub>4</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

an oxygen atom, which is linked to a carbon atom of the group D, or

a NR<sub>4</sub> group, where the latter is linked to a carbon atom of the group D and R<sub>4</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

D denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub>, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> or (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein in each case the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>5</sub> to R<sub>6</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>), (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>), R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>7</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>OCO group and an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

5

10

15

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

20

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

25

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in each case in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

30

35

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

40

45

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted in each case by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

50

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

55

5

- 11 -

10

15

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at a carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_8)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

20

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

25

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  are as hereinbefore defined,

30

35

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  are as hereinbefore defined,

40

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 to 4  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups,

45

50

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  are as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-

55

morpholinyl groups are in each case linked to a carbon atom of the group C,

an  $R_{11}NR_5$  group wherein  $R_5$  and  $R_{11}$  are as hereinbefore defined, or

C and D together denote a hydrogen, fluorine or chlorine atom,

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkoxy group,

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino, 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-homopiperazino or 1-imidazolyl group,

a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted by a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst  $R_{10}$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_6O-PO-OR_6)$  or  $(R_6O-PO-R_6)$  group, whilst  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

a  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group

an amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino or 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-homopiperazino group,

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

with the proviso that at least one of the groups B or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an optionally



substituted 2-oxo-morpholinyl group, an  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$  or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$  group, or

that at least one of the groups B or D contains an optionally substituted 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-4-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-5-yl group, or

that at least one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an  $R_6O-CO$  group and additionally one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains a primary, secondary or tertiary amino function, whilst the nitrogen atom of this amino function is not linked to a carbon atom of an aromatic group.

By the aryl moieties mentioned in the definition of the above-mentioned groups is meant a phenyl group which may in each case be monosubstituted by  $R_{12}$ , mono-, di- or trisubstituted by  $R_{13}$ , or monosubstituted by  $R_{12}$  and additionally mono- or disubstituted by  $R_{13}$ , whilst the substituents may be identical or different and

$R_{12}$  denotes a cyano, carboxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxycarbonyl, aminocarbonyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylaminocarbonyl, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-aminocarbonyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphenyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphinyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonyl, hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonyloxy, trifluoromethyloxy, nitro, amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl-carbonylamino, N- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkylcarbonylamino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonylamino, N- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonylamino, aminosulphonyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylaminosulphonyl or di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-aminosulphonyl group or a carbonyl group which is substituted by a 5- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group, whilst in the abovementioned 6- to 7-membered alkyleneimino groups in each case a methylene group in the 4 position may be replaced by an oxygen or sulphur atom, by a sulphinyl, sulphonyl, imino or N- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-imino group, and

5  $R_{11}$  denotes a fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, trifluoromethyl or  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group or

10 two groups  $R_{11}$ , if they are bound to adjacent carbon atoms, together denote a  $C_{3-5}$ -alkylene, methylenedioxy or 1,3-butadien-1,4-ylene group,

15 whilst of the abovementioned compounds the preferred ones are those wherein

20  $R_2$  to  $R_4$ , A and X are as hereinbefore defined,

25 B denotes an  $R_6O-CO$ -alkylene- $NR_5$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -alkylene- $NR_5$  or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ -alkylene- $NR_5$  group wherein in each case the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two  $C_{1-3}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group,

30 a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

35 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

40 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which in each case is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

45 a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally

substituted at a carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups in each case are linked to a carbon atom of the group A, or

A and B together denote a hydrogen, fluorine or chlorine atom,

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkoxy group,

a  $C_{2-6}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino or 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-homopiperazino group,

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$  or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$  group,

a  $C_{4-7}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group,

an amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino or 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-homopiperazino group,

5  
10 a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

15 C denotes an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -O-C<sub>1-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>1-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned group in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

20 an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

25 an -O-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino group,

30 a -C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group,

35 an -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst the -NR<sub>4</sub>- moiety of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

40 an oxygen atom, which is linked to a carbon atom of the group D, or

45 a NR<sub>4</sub> group, this being linked to a carbon atom of the group D, and

50 D denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub>, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein in each case the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group,

5

10

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

15

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

20

25

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in each case in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

30

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at a carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

35

40

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

45

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

50

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-

55

morpholinyl groups are in each case linked to a carbon atom of the group C, or

C and D together denote a hydrogen, fluorine or chlorine atom,

a C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkoxy group,

a C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-homopiperazino group,

a C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>) or (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>) group,

a C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group

an amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-homopiperazino group,

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

with the proviso that at least one of the groups B or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an optionally substituted 2-oxo-morpholinyl group, a (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>7</sub>) or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>7</sub>) group, or

that at least one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group and additionally one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains a primary, secondary or tertiary amino function, whilst the nitrogen atom of this amino function is not linked to a carbon atom of an aromatic group,

whilst in the abovementioned groups A to D  $R_4$  to  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

particularly those compounds wherein

$R_1$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_2$  denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom,

a methyl, ethyl, hydroxy, methoxy, ethoxy, amino, cyano, vinyl or ethynyl group,

an aryl, aryloxy, arylmethyl or arylmethoxy group,

a methyl or methoxy group substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine atoms or

$R_1$  together with  $R_2$ , if they are bound to adjacent carbon atoms, denote a  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{NH}$  or  $-\text{CH}=\text{N}-\text{NH}$  group and

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

$R_6$  and  $R_4$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

A denotes an  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}-$ alkylene,  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-7}-$ cycloalkylene,  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-3}-$ alkylene- $\text{C}_{3-7}-$ cycloalkylene,  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-7}-$ cycloalkylene- $\text{C}_{1-3}-$ alkylene or  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-3}-$ alkylene- $\text{C}_{3-7}-$ cycloalkylene- $\text{C}_{1-3}-$ alkylene group, whilst

the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

an -O-C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned-O-C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring, or

an oxygen atom, this being linked to a carbon atom of the group B,

B denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub>, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein in each case the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 4 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst

R<sub>5</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group which may be substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group,

a C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkyl group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy or C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group,

a C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl or C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl group,

R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub>, which may be identical or different, in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

a C<sub>1-8</sub>-alkyl group which may be substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy or di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino group or by a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group, whilst in the abovementioned 6- to 7-membered alkyleneimino groups in each case a methylene group in the 4 position may be replaced by an oxygen atom or by an N-(C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl)-imino group,



5 a C<sub>4-6</sub>-cycloalkyl group,

10 a C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkenyl or C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkynyl group, whilst the unsaturated moiety may not be linked to the oxygen atom,

15 a C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or R<sub>6</sub>CO-O-(R<sub>6</sub>CR<sub>6</sub>) group, whilst

20 R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>6</sub>, which may be identical or different, in each case denote a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group and

R<sub>6</sub> denotes a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy or C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkoxy group,

25 and R<sub>6</sub> denotes a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group,

30 a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

35 a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

40 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined and

45 R<sub>10</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

50 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>10</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

5  
10 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which in each case is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_6O-PO-OR_6)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_6O-PO-R_6)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

20 a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted in each case by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl, or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

25 a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

30 a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the above-mentioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at a carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

35  
40 a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the above-mentioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

45  
50 a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_6O-PO-OR_6)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_6O-PO-R_6)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

5 a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis-  
10  $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

15 a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 to 4  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups,

20 a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups in each case are linked to a  
25 carbon atom of the group A,

an  $R_{11}NR_5$  group wherein  $R_5$  is as hereinbefore defined and

30  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-4-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-5-yl group optionally substituted by one or two methyl groups,

35 or A and B together denote a hydrogen atom,

a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group,

40 a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazino or 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-piperazino group,

45 a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted by a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst  $R_{10}$  is as hereinbefore defined,  
50

5 a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group,  
whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

10 a C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>1-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group,

15 C denotes an -O-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylene, -O-C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkylene,  
-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>1-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>4-7</sub>-cyclo-  
alkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>1-7</sub>-cycloal-  
kylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst the oxygen atom of the  
abovementioned group in each case is linked to the bicyclic  
heteroaromatic ring,

20 an -O-C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted from position 2  
onwards by a hydroxy group, whilst the oxygen atom of the  
abovementioned -O-C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked to  
25 the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring, or

30 an oxygen atom, which is linked to a carbon atom of the group  
D,

35 D denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub>, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> or  
(R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein in each case the alkylene  
moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 4 carbon  
atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl  
groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>5</sub> to  
R<sub>8</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

40 a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by  
an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group  
wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

45 a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by  
two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as  
hereinbefore defined,

50 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in  
the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and additionally at a cyclic

5 carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

10 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in each case in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

20 a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

25 a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted in each case by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

30 a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

35 a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the above-mentioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at a carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

40 a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the above-mentioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally

substituted at carbon atoms by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_6O-PO-OR_6)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_6O-PO-R_6)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 to 4  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups,

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups are in each case linked to a carbon atom of the group C,

an  $R_{11}NR_5$  group wherein  $R_5$  and  $R_{11}$  are as hereinbefore defined, or

C and D together denote a hydrogen atom,

a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group,

a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazino or 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-piperazino group,

5  
10 a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group R<sub>10</sub>, whilst R<sub>10</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

15 a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

20 a C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group

25 with the proviso that at least one of the groups B or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an optionally substituted 2-oxo-morpholinyl group, a (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>) or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>) group, or

30 that at least one of the groups B or D contains an optionally substituted 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-4-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-5-yl group, or

35 that at least one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group and additionally one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains a primary, secondary or tertiary amino function, whilst the nitrogen atom of this amino function is not linked to a carbon atom of an aromatic group,

40 whilst by the aryl moieties mentioned in the definition of the abovementioned groups is meant a phenyl group which in each case may be monosubstituted by R<sub>12</sub>, mono- or disubstituted by R<sub>13</sub>, or monosubstituted by R<sub>12</sub> and additionally mono- or disubstituted by R<sub>13</sub>, whilst the substituents may be identical or  
45 different and

50 R<sub>12</sub> denotes a cyano, C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkoxycarbonyl, aminocarbonyl, C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkylaminocarbonyl, di-(C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl)-aminocarbonyl, C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkylsulphenyl, C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkylsulphinyl, C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkylsulphonyl,

hydroxy, nitro, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino or di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino group and

R<sub>11</sub> denotes a fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, a C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl, trifluoromethyl or C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkoxy group or

two groups R<sub>11</sub>, if they are bound to adjacent carbon atoms, together denote a C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkylene, methylenedioxy or 1,3-butadien-1,4-ylene group,

the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof.

Particularly preferred compounds of general formula I are those wherein

R<sub>a</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

R<sub>b</sub> denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups R<sub>1</sub> to R<sub>3</sub>, whilst

R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub>, which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

a methyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxy, ethynyl or cyano group and

R<sub>3</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

R<sub>c</sub> and R<sub>d</sub> in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

A denotes an -O-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylene or -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH(OH)-CH<sub>2</sub> group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,



5  
10 B denotes an  $R_6O-CO$ -alkylene- $NR_5$  group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 or 2 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO$ -methyl group, whilst

$R_5$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

15 a  $C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group which may be substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  group,

20 a  $C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group which is substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group,

a  $C_{3,6}$ -cycloalkyl or  $C_{3,6}$ -cycloalkylmethyl group and

25  $R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

30 a  $C_{1,6}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_6CO-O-(R_6CR_6)$  group, whilst

$R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom or a  $C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group,

35  $R_7$  denotes a hydrogen atom and

$R_8$  denotes a  $C_{1,4}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl,  $C_{1,4}$ -alkoxy, cyclopentyloxy or cyclohexyloxy group,

40 a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

45 a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,2}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

50

55

5 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by  
the group  $R_{10}$  and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  
10  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore  
defined and

$R_{10}$  denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

15 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  
 $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  
 $(R_7O-PO-R_8)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

20  $R_7$  and  $R_8$ , which may be identical or different, in each  
case denote a hydrogen atom, a methyl, ethyl, phenyl,  
benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_9CO-O-(R_4CR_t)$  group, whilst

25  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

and  $R_9$  denotes a methyl or ethyl group,

30 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  
 $R_6O-CO-C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom  
by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as herein-  
before defined,

35 a morpholino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-$   
 $C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

40 a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 posi-  
tion by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1,4}$ -alkyl,  
 $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_8)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$   
are as hereinbefore defined,

45 a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2  
methyl groups,

50 a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 posi-  
tion by a methyl, ethyl or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is

as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups in each case are linked to a carbon atom of the group A, or

a  $R_{11}N(C_{1,2}\text{-alkyl})$  group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group, or

A and B together denote a hydrogen atom, a methoxy, ethoxy or 2-methoxy-ethoxy group,

a  $C_{1,2}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted by an  $R_6O\text{-CO}$  group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a  $C_{4,6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3,6}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1,3}$ -alkoxy group,

C denotes an  $-O\text{-}C_{1,4}$ -alkylene or  $-O\text{-CH}_2\text{-CH(OH)-CH}_2$  group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

D denotes an  $R_6O\text{-CO-alkylene-NR}_5$  group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 or 2 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by an  $R_6O\text{-CO}$  or  $R_6O\text{-CO-methyl}$  group, whilst  $R_5$  and  $R_6$  are as hereinbefore defined,

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O\text{-CO}$  or  $R_6O\text{-CO-}C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by two  $R_6O\text{-CO}$  or  $R_6O\text{-CO-}C_{1,2}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O\text{-CO}$  or  $R_6O\text{-CO-}C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

5

10

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_6O-PO-OR_6)$ -methyl or  $(R_6O-PO-R_6)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..2}$ -alkyl group and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

20

a morpholino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

25

a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_6O-PO-OR_6)$ -methyl or  $(R_6O-PO-R_6)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  are as hereinbefore defined,

30

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

35

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a methyl, ethyl or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups are in each case linked to a carbon atom of the group C,

40

a  $R_{11}N(C_{1..2}$ -alkyl) group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group, or

45

C and D together denote a hydrogen atom, a methoxy, ethoxy or 2-methoxy-ethoxy group,

50

a  $C_{1..2}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

55

a  $C_{4..6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3..6}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1..3}$ -alkoxy group

5

10

with the proviso that at least one of the groups B or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an optionally substituted 2-oxo-morpholinyl group, a  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$  or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$  group, or

15

20

that at least one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an  $R_4O-CO$  group and additionally one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains a primary, secondary or tertiary amino function, whilst the nitrogen atom of this amino function is not linked to a carbon atom of an aromatic group,

the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof.

25

Most particularly preferred compounds of general formula I are those wherein

30

$R_a$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

35

$R_b$  denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst

40

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

a methyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxy, ethynyl or cyano group and

45

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_c$  and  $R_d$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

50

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

55

5 A denotes an  $-O-C_{1-4}$ -alkylene or  $-O-CH_2-CH(OH)-CH_2$  group, whilst  
the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is  
10 linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

B denotes an  $R_6O-CO$ -alkylene- $NR_5$  group wherein the alkylene  
moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 or 2 carbon  
15 atoms, may additionally be substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO$ -  
methyl group, whilst

$R_5$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

20 a  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group which may be substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$   
group,

25 a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkyl group which is substituted from position 2  
onwards by a hydroxy group,

a  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkylmethyl group and

30  $R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexyl,  
35 cyclohexylmethyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_6CO-O-$   
( $R_6CR_6$ ) group, whilst

$R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom or a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

40  $R_7$  denotes a hydrogen atom and

$R_8$  denotes a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl,  
45  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, cyclopentyloxy or cyclohexyloxy group,

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an  
 $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore  
50 defined,

5 a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by two  
10  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore  
defined,

15 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by  
the group  $R_{10}$  and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  
 $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore  
defined and

$R_{10}$  denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

20 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  
 $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  
 $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

25  $R_7$  and  $R_8$ , which may be identical or different, in each  
case denote a hydrogen atom, a methyl, ethyl, phenyl,  
benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_9CO-O-(R_6CR_7)$  group, whilst

30  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

and  $R_9$  denotes a methyl or ethyl group,

35 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  
 $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group and is additionally substituted at a  
cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group  
wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

40 a morpholino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-$   
 $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

45 a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 posi-  
tion by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  
 $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$   
are as hereinbefore defined,

50

55

5 a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2  
methyl groups,

10 a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a methyl, ethyl or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups in each case are linked to a carbon atom of the  
15 group A,

20 a  $R_{11}N(C_{1-2}$ -alkyl) group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group, and

C and D together denote a hydrogen atom, a methoxy, ethoxy, 2-methoxy-ethoxy,  $C_{4-6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-2}$ -alkoxy  
25 group,

particularly those compounds wherein

30  $R_4$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_5$  denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst  
35

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

40 a methyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxy, ethynyl or cyano group and

45  $R_3$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_6$  and  $R_4$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

50 X denotes a nitrogen atom,



5 A and B together denote a hydrogen atom, a methoxy, ethoxy,  
2-methoxy-ethoxy, C<sub>4-6</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkoxy  
10 group,

15 C denotes an -O-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylene or -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH(OH)-CH<sub>2</sub> group, whilst  
the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is  
linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring, and

20 D denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein the alkylene  
moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 or 2 carbon  
atoms, may additionally be substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-  
methyl group, whilst

R<sub>5</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

25 a C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group which may be substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO  
group,

30 a C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkyl group which is substituted from position 2 by a  
hydroxy group,

a C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl or C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkylmethyl group and

35 R<sub>6</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

40 a C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexyl,  
cyclohexylmethyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-indanyl or R<sub>6</sub>CO-O-  
(R<sub>6</sub>CR<sub>6</sub>) group, whilst

R<sub>6</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group,

45 R<sub>7</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom and

R<sub>8</sub> denotes a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl,  
C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, cyclopentyloxy or cyclohexyloxy group,  
50

5 a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an  
R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,2</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore  
10 defined,

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by two  
R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,2</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore  
15 defined,

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by  
the group R<sub>10</sub> and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  
R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,2</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore  
20 defined and

R<sub>10</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

25 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  
R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>)-methyl or  
(R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>)-methyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

30 R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub>, which may be identical or different, in each  
case denote a hydrogen atom, a methyl, ethyl, phenyl,  
benzyl, 5-indanyl or R<sub>9</sub>CO-O-(R<sub>6</sub>CR<sub>2</sub>) group, whilst

35 R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

and R<sub>9</sub> denotes a methyl or ethyl group,

40 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  
R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,2</sub>-alkyl group and is additionally substituted at a  
cyclic carbon atom by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,2</sub>-alkyl group  
wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

45 a morpholino group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-  
C<sub>1,2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

50 a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 posi-  
tion by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkyl,

(R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-methyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-methyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a methyl, ethyl or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups are in each case linked to a carbon atom of the group C, or

a R<sub>11</sub>N(C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl) group wherein R<sub>11</sub> denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group,

the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof.

The most preferred bicyclic heterocyclic compounds of general formula I, however, are those wherein

R<sub>a</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

R<sub>b</sub> denotes a phenyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups R<sub>1</sub> to R<sub>3</sub>, whilst

R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub>, which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom and

R<sub>3</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

R<sub>c</sub> and R<sub>d</sub> in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

A denotes an -O-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylene or -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH(OH)-CH<sub>2</sub> group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

5

B denotes an  $R_6O-CO-CH_2-NR_5$  group wherein

10

$R_5$  denotes a hydrogen atom or a methyl group which may be substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  group, or

15

a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkyl group substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group, and

$R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

20

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

25

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-CH_2$  or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-3}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

30

a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-CH_2$  group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

35

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by one or two methyl groups, or

40

a  $R_{11}N(C_{1-2}\text{-alkyl})$  group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group, and

C and D together denote a methoxy,  $C_{4-6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkylmethoxy group,

45

particular those compounds wherein

$R_5$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

50

$R_6$  denotes a phenyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst

55

5  
10  $R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom and

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

15  $R_6$  and  $R_4$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

20 A and B together denote a  $C_{1-6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl-methoxy group,

25 C denotes an  $-O-CH_2CH_2$  group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned group is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

D denotes an  $R_5O-CO-CH_2-NR_5$  group wherein

30  $R_5$  denotes a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkyl group substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group, and

35  $R_6$  denotes a methyl or ethyl group,

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by one or two methyl groups, or

40 a  $R_{11}N(C_{1-2}\text{-alkyl})$  group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group,

45 the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof.

The following particularly preferred compounds of general formula I are mentioned by way of example:

50 (1) 4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-{3-[4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-1-piperazinyl]propyloxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline,

(2) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline,

(3) (S)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[3-(2-methoxycarbonyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline,

(4) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}-2-hydroxy-propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline,

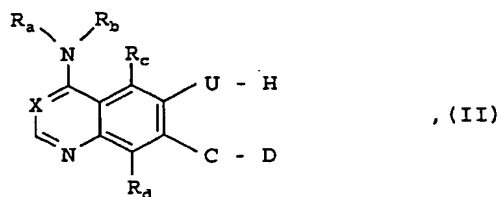
(5) (S)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-pyrrolidine-2-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline and

(6) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[1,2 bis(methoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

and the salts thereof.

The compounds of general formula I may, for example, be prepared by the following methods:

a) reacting a compound of general formula



wherein

R<sub>a</sub> to R<sub>d</sub>, C, D and X are as hereinbefore defined and U denotes an oxygen atom or an R<sub>i</sub>N group, whilst R<sub>i</sub> is as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of general formula



wherein

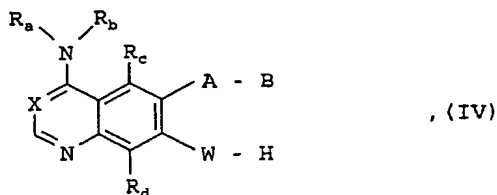
B is as hereinbefore defined,

A' denotes one of the optionally substituted alkylene, cycloalkylene, alkylene-cycloalkylene, cycloalkylene-alkylene or alkylene-cycloalkylene-alkylene moieties mentioned above for the group A, which are linked to the heteroaromatic group via an oxygen atom or via an NR<sub>4</sub> group, and

Z<sub>1</sub> denotes a leaving group such as a halogen atom or a sulphonyloxy group such as a chlorine or bromine atom, a methanesulphonyloxy or p-toluenesulphonyloxy group.

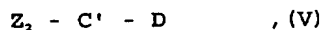
The reaction is optionally carried out in a solvent or mixture of solvents such as methylene chloride, dimethylformamide, dimethylsulphoxide, sulfolane, benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene, tetrahydrofuran, benzene/tetrahydrofuran or dioxane conveniently in the presence of a tertiary organic base such as triethylamine, pyridine or 2-dimethylaminopyridine, in the presence of N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (Hünig's base), whilst these organic bases may simultaneously serve as solvents, or in the presence of an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or sodium hydroxide solution conveniently at temperatures between -20 and 200°C, preferably at temperatures between 0 and 150°C.

b) reacting a compound of general formula



wherein

R<sub>a</sub> to R<sub>d</sub>, A, B and X are as hereinbefore defined and W denotes an oxygen atom or an R<sub>4</sub>N group, whilst R<sub>4</sub> is as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of general formula



wherein

D is as hereinbefore defined,

C' denotes one of the optionally substituted alkylene, cycloalkylene, alkylene-cycloalkylene, cycloalkylene-alkylene or alkylene-cycloalkylene-alkylene moieties mentioned above for the group C, which are linked to the heteroaromatic group via an oxygen atom or via an NR<sub>4</sub> group, and

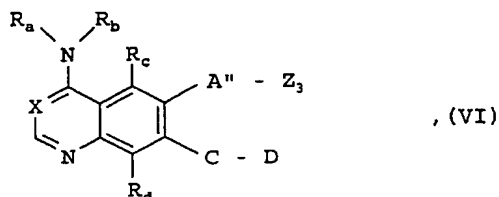
Z<sub>2</sub> denotes a leaving group such as a halogen atom or a sulphonyloxy group such as a chlorine or bromine atom, a methanesulphonyloxy or p-toluenesulphonyloxy group.

The reaction is optionally carried out in a solvent or mixture of solvents such as methylene chloride, dimethylformamide, dimethylsulphoxide, sulpholane, benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene, tetrahydrofuran, benzene/tetrahydrofuran or dioxane conveniently in the presence of a tertiary organic base such as triethylamine, pyridine or 2-dimethylaminopyridine, in the presence of N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (Hünig's base), whilst these organic bases may simultaneously serve as solvents, or in the presence of an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or sodium hydroxide solution or in the presence of an alkali or alkaline earth metal alkoxide such as sodium ethoxide or potassium tert.butoxide conveniently at temperatures between -20 and 200°C, preferably at temperatures between 0 and 150°C.

c) In order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein A is as hereinbefore defined with the exception of the oxygen atom and the -NR<sub>4</sub> group:



reacting a compound of general formula



wherein

$R_a$  to  $R_d$ , C, D and X are as hereinbefore defined and  $A''$  has the meanings given for A hereinbefore with the exception of the oxygen atom and the  $-NR_x$  group and  $Z_3$  denotes a leaving group such as a halogen atom or a sulphonyloxy group such as a chlorine or bromine atom, a methanesulphonyloxy or p-toluenesulphonyloxy group or together with a hydrogen atom of an adjacent hydrocarbon group denotes an oxygen atom, with a compound of general formula



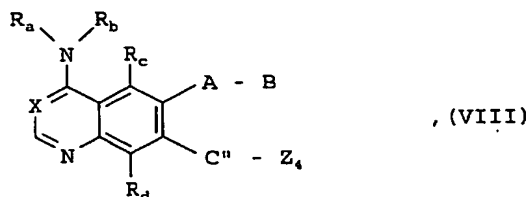
wherein

B is as hereinbefore defined.

The reaction is optionally carried out in a solvent or mixture of solvents such as acetonitrile, ethanol, methylene chloride, dimethylformamide, dimethylsulphoxide, sulpholane, benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene, tetrahydrofuran, benzene/tetrahydrofuran or dioxane, optionally in the presence of a tertiary organic base such as triethylamine, pyridine or 2-dimethylaminopyridine, in the presence of N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (Hünig's base), whilst these organic bases may simultaneously serve as solvents, or in the presence of an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or sodium hydroxide solution or in the presence of an alkali or alkaline earth metal alkoxide such as sodium ethoxide or potassium tert.but-oxide, conveniently at temperatures between  $-20$  and  $200^\circ\text{C}$ , preferably at temperatures between  $0$  and  $150^\circ\text{C}$ .

d) In order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein C is as hereinbefore defined with the exception of the oxygen atom and the  $-NR_4$  group:

reacting a compound of general formula



wherein

C'' has the meanings given for C hereinbefore with the exception of the oxygen atom and the  $-NR_4$  group and

Z<sub>4</sub> denotes a leaving group such as a halogen atom or a sulphonyloxy group such as a chlorine or bromine atom, a methanesulphonyloxy or p-toluenesulphonyloxy group or together with a hydrogen atom of an adjacent hydrocarbon group denotes an oxygen atom, with a compound of general formula



wherein

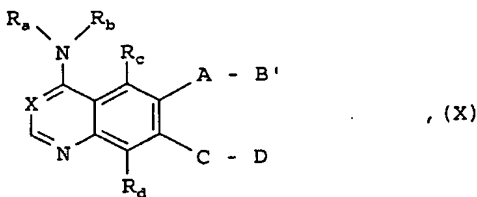
D is as hereinbefore defined.

The reaction is optionally carried out in a solvent or mixture of solvents such as acetonitrile, ethanol, methylene chloride, dimethylformamide, dimethylsulphoxide, sulpholane, benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene, tetrahydrofuran, benzene/tetrahydrofuran or dioxane optionally in the presence of a tertiary organic base such as triethylamine, pyridine or 2-dimethylaminopyridine, in the presence of N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (Hünig's base), whilst these organic bases may simultaneously serve as solvents, or in the presence of an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or sodium hydroxide

solution or in the presence of an alkali or alkaline earth metal alkoxide such as sodium ethoxide or potassium tert.but-oxide, conveniently at temperatures between -20 and 200°C, preferably at temperatures between 0 and 150°C.

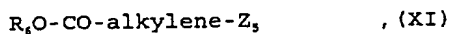
e) In order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein B denotes an  $R_6O-CO$ -alkylene- $NR_5$  group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, a piperazino or homopiperazino group substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group or a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst in each case  $R_5$  and  $R_6$  are as hereinbefore defined:

reacting a compound of general formula



wherein

$R_a$  to  $R_d$ , A, C, D and X are as hereinbefore defined and  $B'$  denotes an  $R_5NH$  group wherein  $R_5$  is as hereinbefore defined, a piperazino or homopiperazino group unsubstituted in the 4 position, a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group unsubstituted in the 1 position, with a compound of general formula



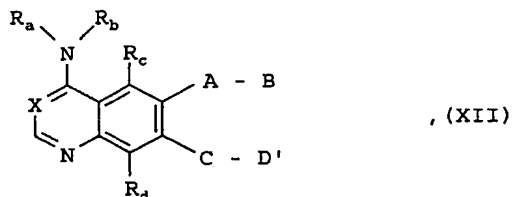
wherein

the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  in each case is as hereinbefore defined, and  $Z_5$  denotes an exchangeable group such as a halogen atom or a substituted sulphonyloxy group, e.g. a chlorine or bromine atom, a methylsulphonyloxy, propylsulphonyloxy, phenylsulphonyloxy or benzylsulphonyloxy group.

The reaction is optionally carried out in a solvent or mixture of solvents such as acetonitrile, methylene chloride, dimethylformamide, dimethylsulphoxide, sulpholane, benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene, tetrahydrofuran, benzene/tetrahydrofuran or dioxane conveniently in the presence of a tertiary organic base such as triethylamine or N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (Hünig's base), whilst these organic bases may simultaneously serve as solvents, or in the presence of an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or sodium hydroxide solution conveniently at temperatures between  $-20$  and  $200^\circ C$ , preferably at temperatures between  $0$  and  $150^\circ C$ .

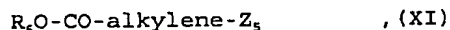
f) In order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein D denotes an  $R_6O-CO$ -alkylene- $NR_7$  group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, a piperazino or homopiperazino group substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group or a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst in each case  $R_5$  and  $R_6$  are as hereinbefore defined:

reacting a compound of general formula



wherein

$R_a$  to  $R_d$ , A to C and X are as hereinbefore defined and  $D'$  denotes an  $R_sNH$  group wherein  $R_s$  is as hereinbefore defined, a piperazino or homopiperazino group unsubstituted in the 4 position, a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group unsubstituted in the 1 position, with a compound of general formula



wherein

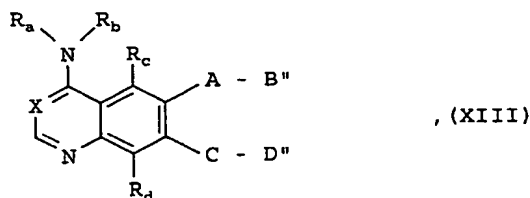
the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  in each case is as hereinbefore defined, and  $Z_s$  denotes an exchangeable group such as a halogen atom or a substituted sulphonyloxy group, e.g. a chlorine or bromine atom, a methylsulphonyloxy, propylsulphonyloxy, phenylsulphonyloxy or benzylsulphonyloxy group.

The reaction is optionally carried out in a solvent or mixture of solvents such as acetonitrile, methylene chloride, dimethylformamide, dimethylsulphoxide, sulpholane, benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene, tetrahydrofuran, benzene/tetrahydrofuran or dioxane conveniently in the presence of a tertiary organic base such as triethylamine or N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (Hünig's base), whilst these organic bases may simultaneously serve as solvents, or in the presence of an inorganic base such as

sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or sodium hydroxide solution conveniently at temperatures between -20 and 200°C, preferably at temperatures between 0 and 150°C.

g) In order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  denotes a hydrogen atom:

Converting a compound of general formula



wherein

$R_a$  to  $R_d$ , A, C and X are as hereinbefore defined, B" and D" have the meanings given for B and D hereinbefore, with the proviso that at least one of the groups B" or D" contains an  $R_6$ -CO,  $(R_6$ O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>) or  $(R_6$ O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>) group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and at least one of the groups  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  does not represent a hydrogen atom, by hydrolysis, treating with acids, thermolysis or hydrogenolysis, into a compound of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  denotes a hydrogen atom.

The hydrolysis is conveniently carried out either in the presence of an acid such as hydrochloric acid, sulphuric acid, phosphoric acid, acetic acid, trichloroacetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid or mixtures thereof or in the presence of a base such as lithium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide in a suitable solvent such as water, water/methanol, water/ethanol, water/isopropanol, methanol, ethanol, water/tetrahydrofuran or water/dioxane at temperatures between -10 and 120°C, e.g. at temperatures between ambient temperature and the boiling temperature of the reaction mixture.

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
If B" or D" in a compound of formula X for example contains the tert.butyloxycarbonyl group, the tert.butyl group may also be cleaved by treating with an acid such as trifluoroacetic acid, formic acid, p-toluenesulphonic acid, sulphuric acid, hydrochloric acid, phosphoric acid or polyphosphoric acid optionally in an inert solvent such as methylene chloride, chloroform, benzene, toluene, diethylether, tetrahydrofuran or dioxane preferably at temperatures between -10 and 120°C, e.g. at temperatures between 0 and 60°C, or thermally, optionally in an inert solvent such as methylene chloride, chloroform, benzene, toluene, tetrahydrofuran or dioxane and preferably in the presence of a catalytic amount of an acid such as p-toluenesulphonic acid, sulphuric acid, phosphoric acid or polyphosphoric acid preferably at the boiling temperature of the solvent used, e.g. at temperatures between 40 and 120°C. Under the reaction conditions mentioned above, any N-tert.butyloxycarbonylamino or N-tert.butyloxycarbonylimino groups present may be converted into the corresponding amino or imino groups.

35  
40  
45  
If B" or D" in a compound of formula X for example contains the benzyloxycarbonyl group, the benzyl group may also be cleaved hydrogenolytically in the presence of a hydrogenation catalyst such as palladium/charcoal in a suitable solvent such as methanol, ethanol, ethanol/water, glacial acetic acid, ethyl acetate, dioxane or dimethylformamide, preferably at temperatures between 0 and 50°C, e.g. ambient temperature, and at a hydrogen pressure of 1 to 5 bar. During the hydrogenolysis other groups may simultaneously be converted, e.g. a nitro group may be converted into an amino group, a benzyloxy group into a hydroxy group and a N-benzylamino, N-benzylimino, N-benzyloxycarbonylamino or N-benzyloxycarbonylimino group into a corresponding amino or imino group.

50  
55  
If according to the invention a compound of general formula I is obtained which contains a carboxy or hydroxyphosphoryl

5

- 52 -

group, this may be converted by esterification into a corresponding ester of general formula I or

10

If a compound of general formula I is obtained wherein B or D denotes an optionally substituted N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-glycine or N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-glycinester group, this may be converted by cyclisation in a corresponding 2-oxo-morpholino compound.

15

The subsequent esterification is optionally carried out in a solvent or mixture of solvents such as methylene chloride, dimethylformamide, benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene, tetrahydrofuran, benzene/tetrahydrofuran or dioxane or particularly advantageously in a corresponding alcohol, optionally in the presence of an acid such as hydrochloric acid or in the presence of a dehydrating agent, e.g. in the presence of isobutyl chloroformate, thionylchloride, trimethylchlorosilane, sulphuric acid, methanesulphonic acid, p-toluenesulphonic acid, phosphorus trichloride, phosphorus pentoxide, N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide/N-hydroxysuccinimide or 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole and optionally additionally in the presence of 4-dimethylamino-pyridine, N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole or triphenyl-phosphine/carbon tetrachloride, conveniently at temperatures between 0 and 150°C, preferably at temperatures between 0 and 80°C.

20

25

30

35

The subsequent ester formation may also be carried out by reacting a compound which contains a carboxy or hydroxyphosphoryl group with a corresponding alkyl halide.

40

The subsequent intramolecular cyclisation is optionally carried out in a solvent or mixture of solvents such as acetonitrile, methylene chloride, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane or toluene in the presence an acid such as hydrochloric acid or p-toluenesulphonic acid at temperatures between -10 and 120°C.

45

50

In the reactions described hereinbefore, any reactive groups present such as hydroxy, carboxy, phosphono, O-alkyl-phosphono,

55



5 amino, alkylamino or imino groups may be protected during the  
reaction by conventional protecting groups which are cleaved  
10 again after the reaction.

For example, a protecting group for a hydroxy group may be a  
trimethylsilyl, acetyl, benzoyl, methyl, ethyl, tert.butyl,  
15 trityl, benzyl or tetrahydropyranyl group.

protecting groups for a carboxy group may be a trimethylsilyl,  
methyl, ethyl, tert.butyl, benzyl or tetrahydropyranyl group,

20 protecting groups for a phosphono group may be an alkyl group  
such as the methyl, ethyl, isopropyl or n-butyl group, the  
phenyl or benzyl group, and

25 protecting groups for an amino, alkylamino or imino group may  
be a formyl, acetyl, trifluoroacetyl, ethoxycarbonyl, tert.but-  
oxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, benzyl, methoxybenzyl or  
30 2,4-dimethoxybenzyl group and additionally, for the amino  
group, a phthalyl group.

Any protecting group used is optionally subsequently cleaved  
35 for example by hydrolysis in an aqueous solvent, e.g. in water,  
isopropanol/water, acetic acid/water, tetrahydrofuran/water or  
dioxane/water, in the presence of an acid such as trifluoroace-  
tic acid, hydrochloric acid or sulphuric acid or in the pre-  
40 sence of an alkali metal base such as sodium hydroxide or  
potassium hydroxide or aprotically, e.g. in the presence of  
iodotrimethylsilane, at temperatures between 0 and 120°C,  
preferably at temperatures between 10 and 100°C.

45 However, a benzyl, methoxybenzyl or benzyloxycarbonyl group is  
cleaved, for example, hydrogenolytically, e.g. with hydrogen in  
the presence of a catalyst such as palladium/charcoal in a sui-  
table solvent such as methanol, ethanol, ethyl acetate or gla-  
50 cial acetic acid, optionally with the addition of an acid such  
as hydrochloric acid at temperatures between 0 and 100°C, but

preferably at temperatures between 20 and 60°C, and at a hydrogen pressure of 1 to 7 bar, but preferably 3 to 5 bar. A 2,4-dimethoxybenzyl group, however, is preferably cleaved in trifluoroacetic acid in the presence of anisol.

A tert.butyl or tert.butyloxycarbonyl group is preferably cleaved by treating with an acid such as trifluoroacetic acid or hydrochloric acid or by treating with iodotrimethylsilane optionally using a solvent such as methylene chloride, dioxane, methanol or diethylether.

A trifluoroacetyl group is preferably cleaved by treating with an acid such as hydrochloric acid, optionally in the presence of a solvent such as acetic acid at temperatures between 50 and 120°C or by treating with sodium hydroxide solution optionally in the presence of a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran at temperatures between 0 and 50°C.

A phthalyl group is preferably cleaved in the presence of hydrazine or a primary amine such as methylamine, ethylamine or n-butylamine in a solvent such as methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, toluene/water or dioxane at temperatures between 20 and 50°C.

A single alkyl group may be cleaved from an O,O'-dialkylphosphono group with sodium iodide, for example, in a solvent such as acetone, methylethylketone, acetonitrile or dimethylformamide at temperatures between 40 and 150°C, but preferably at temperatures between 60 and 100°C.

Both alkyl groups may be cleaved from an O,O'-dialkyl-phosphono group with iodotrimethylsilane, bromotrimethylsilane or chlorotrimethylsilane/sodium iodide, for example, in a solvent such as methylene chloride, chloroform or acetonitrile at temperatures between 0°C and the boiling temperature of the reaction mixture, but preferably at temperatures between 20 and 60°C.

5

- 55 -

10

Moreover, the compounds of general formula I obtained may be resolved into their enantiomers and/or diastereomers, as mentioned hereinbefore. Thus, for example, cis/trans mixtures may be resolved into their cis and trans isomers, and compounds with at least one optically active carbon atom may be separated into their enantiomers.

15

20

Thus, for example, the cis/trans mixtures may be resolved by chromatography into the cis and trans isomers thereof, the compounds of general formula I obtained which occur as racemates may be separated by methods known *per se* (cf. Allinger N. L. and Eliel E. L. in "Topics in Stereochemistry", Vol. 6, Wiley Interscience, 1971) into their optical antipodes and compounds of general formula I with at least 2 asymmetric carbon atoms may be resolved into their diastereomers on the basis of their physical-chemical differences using methods known *per se*, e.g. by chromatography and/or fractional crystallisation, and, if these compounds are obtained in racemic form, they may subsequently be resolved into the enantiomers as mentioned above.

25

30

35

40

45

50

The enantiomers are preferably separated by column separation on chiral phases or by recrystallisation from an optically active solvent or by reacting with an optically active substance which forms salts or derivatives such as e.g. esters or amides with the racemic compound, particularly acids and the activated derivatives or alcohols thereof, and separating the diastereomeric mixture of salts or derivatives thus obtained, e.g. on the basis of their differences in solubility, whilst the free antipodes may be released from the pure diastereomeric salts or derivatives by the action of suitable agents. Optically active acids in common use are e.g. the D- and L-forms of tartaric acid or dibenzoyltartaric acid, di-o-tolytartaric acid, malic acid, mandelic acid, camphorsulphonic acid, glutamic acid, aspartic acid or quinic acid. An optically active alcohol may be for example (+) or (-)-menthol and an optically

55

5

- 56 -

10

active acyl group in amides, for example, may be a (+)- or (-)-menthyloxycarbonyl.

15

Furthermore, the compounds of formula I may be converted into the salts thereof, particularly for pharmaceutical use into the physiologically acceptable salts with inorganic or organic acids. Acids which may be used for this purpose include for example hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulphuric acid, phosphoric acid, fumaric acid, succinic acid, lactic acid, citric acid, tartaric acid or maleic acid.

20

25

Moreover, if the new compounds of formula I thus obtained contain a carboxy, hydroxyphosphoryl, sulphy or 5-tetrazolyl group, they may subsequently, if desired, be converted into the salts thereof with inorganic or organic bases, particularly for pharmaceutical use into the physiologically acceptable salts thereof. Suitable bases for this purpose include for example sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, arginine, cyclohexylamine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine and triethanolamine.

30

35

The compounds of general formulae II to XIII used as starting materials are known from the literature in some cases or may be obtained by methods known from the literature (cf. Examples I to XVI).

40

45

As already mentioned hereinbefore, the compounds of general formula I according to the invention and their physiologically acceptable salts have valuable pharmacological properties, particularly an inhibiting effect on signal transduction mediated by the Epidermal Growth Factor receptor (EGF-R), whilst this may be achieved for example by inhibiting ligand bonding, receptor dimerisation or tyrosine kinase itself. It is also possible to block the transmission of signals to components located further down.

50

The biological properties of the new compounds were investigated as follows:

55

5

- 57 -

10

15

20

The inhibition of the EGF-R-mediated signal transmission can be demonstrated e.g. with cells which express human EGF-R and whose survival and proliferation depend on stimulation by EGF or TGF- $\alpha$ . A cell line of murine origin dependent on interleukin-3-(IL-3) which was genetically modified to express functional human EGF-R was used here. The proliferation of these cells known as F/L-HERc can therefore be stimulated either by murine IL-3 or by EGF (cf. von Rüden, T. et al. in EMBO J. 7, 2749-2756 (1988) and Pierce, J. H. et al. in Science 239, 628-631 (1988)).

25

30

35

40

The starting material used for the F/L-HERc cells was the cell line FDC-P<sub>1</sub>, the production of which has been described by Dexter, T. M. et al. in J. Exp. Med. 152, 1036-1047 (1980). Alternatively, however, other growth-factor-dependent cells may also be used (cf. for example Pierce, J. H. et al. in Science 239, 628-631 (1988), Shibuya, H. et al. in Cell 70, 57-67 (1992) and Alexander, W. S. et al. in EMBO J. 10, 3683-3691 (1991)). For expressing the human EGF-R cDNA (cf. Ullrich, A. et al. in Nature 309, 418-425 (1984)) recombinant retroviruses were used as described by von Rüden, T. et al., EMBO J. 7, 2749-2756 (1988), except that the retroviral vector LXS<sub>N</sub> (cf. Miller, A. D. et al. in BioTechniques 7, 980-990 (1989)) was used for the expression of the EGF-R cDNA and the line GP+E86 (cf. Markowitz, D. et al. in J. Virol. 62, 1120-1124 (1988)) was used as the packaging cell.

The test was performed as follows:

45

50

55

F/L-HERc cells were cultivated in RPMI/1640 medium (BioWhittaker), supplemented with 10 % foetal calf serum (FCS, Boehringer Mannheim), 2 mM glutamine (BioWhittaker), standard antibiotics and 20 ng/ml of human EGF (Promega), at 37°C and 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. In order to investigate the inhibitory activity of the compounds according to the invention,  $1.5 \times 10^4$  cells per well were cultivated in triplicate in 96-well dishes in the above

- 58 -

medium (200  $\mu$ l), the cell proliferation being stimulated with either EGF (20 ng/ml) or murine IL-3. The IL-3 used was obtained from culture supernatants of the cell line X63/0 mIL-3 (cf. Karasuyama, H. et al. in Eur. J. Immunol. 18, 97-104 (1988)). The compounds according to the invention were dissolved in 100% dimethylsulphoxide (DMSO) and added to the cultures in various dilutions, the maximum DMSO concentration being 1%. The cultures were incubated for 48 hours at 37°C.

In order to determine the inhibitory activity of the compounds according to the invention the relative cell number was measured in O.D. units using the Cell Titer 96<sup>TM</sup> Aqueous Non-Radioactive Cell Proliferation Assay (Promega). The relative cell number was calculated as a percentage of the control (F/LHERc cells without inhibitor) and the concentration of active substance which inhibits the proliferation of the cells by 50% (IC<sub>50</sub>) was derived therefrom. The following results were obtained:

| Compound<br>(Example no.) | Inhibition of EGF-<br>dependent<br>proliferation<br>IC <sub>50</sub> [nM] |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1                         | 46  |
| 1 (2)                     | 20  |
| 2                         | 230   |
| 2 (1)                     | 39  |
| 3                         | 45  |
| 3 (1)                     | 100   |
| 3 (2)                     | 70  |
| 3 (4)                     | 77  |
| 4                         | 33  |

The compounds of general formula I according to the invention thus inhibit the signal transduction by tyrosine kinases, as demonstrated by the example of the human EGF receptor, and are

5

- 59 -

10

therefore useful for treating pathophysiological processes caused by hyperfunction of tyrosinekinases. These are e.g. benign or malignant tumours, particularly tumours of epithelial and neuroepithelial origin, metastatisation and the abnormal proliferation of vascular endothelial cells (neangiogenesis).

15

20

25

The compounds according to the invention are also useful for preventing and treating diseases of the airways and lungs which are accompanied by increased or altered production of mucus caused by stimulation by tyrosinekinases, e.g. in inflammatory diseases of the airways such as chronic bronchitis, chronic obstructive bronchitis, asthma, bronchiectasias, allergic or non-allergic rhinitis or sinusitis, cystic fibrosis,  $\alpha$ 1-antitrypsin deficiency, or coughs, pulmonary emphysema, pulmonary fibrosis and hyperreactive airways.

30

35

40

45

The compounds are also suitable for treating diseases of the gastrointestinal tract and bile duct and gall bladder which are associated with disrupted activity of the tyrosinekinases, such as may be found e.g. in chronic inflammatory changes such as cholecystitis, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, and ulcers in the gastrointestinal tract or such as may occur in diseases of the gastrointestinal tract which are associated with increased secretions, such as Ménétrier's disease, secreting adenomas and protein loss syndrome, and also for treating nasal polyps and polyps of the gastrointestinal tract of various origins such as e.g. villous or adenomatous polyps of the large bowel, but also polyps in familial polyposis coli, intestinal polyps in Gardner's syndrome, polyps throughout the entire gastrointestinal tract in Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, in inflammatory pseudopolyps, juvenile polyps, Colitis cystica profunda and Pneumatosis cystoides intestinales.

50

Moreover, the compounds of general formula I and the physiologically acceptable salts thereof may be used to treat kidney diseases, particularly in cystic changes such as cystic kid-

55

5

- 60 -

10

15

neys, for treating renal cysts which may be idiopathic in origin or occur in syndromes such as e.g. tuberculous sclerosis, in von-Hippel-Lindau Syndrome, in nephronophthisis and spongy kidney and other diseases caused by aberrant function of tyrosinekinases, such as e.g. epidermal hyperproliferation (psoriasis), inflammatory processes, diseases of the immune system, hyperproliferation of haematopoietic cells, etc.

20

25

30

35

40

By reason of their biological properties the compounds according to the invention may be used on their own or in conjunction with other pharmacologically active compounds, for example in tumour therapy, in monotherapy or in conjunction with other anti-tumour therapeutic agents, for example in combination with topoisomerase inhibitors (e.g. etoposide), mitosis inhibitors (e.g. vinblastin), compounds which interact with nucleic acids (e.g. cis-platin, cyclophosphamide, adriamycin), hormone antagonists (e.g. tamoxifen), inhibitors of metabolic processes (e.g. 5-FU etc.), cytokines (e.g. interferons), antibodies, etc. For treating respiratory tract diseases, these compounds may be used on their own or in conjunction with other therapeutic agents for the airways, such as substances with a secretolytic, broncholytic and/or anti-inflammatory activity. For treating diseases in the region of the gastrointestinal tract, these compounds may also be administered on their own or in conjunction with substances having an effect on motility or secretion or antiinflammatory substances. These combinations may be administered either simultaneously or sequentially.

45

50

These compounds may be administered either on their own or in conjunction with other active substances by intravenous, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intrarectal, intraperitoneal or intranasal route, by inhalation or transdermally or orally, whilst aerosol formulations are particularly suitable for inhalation.

55



5

- 61 -

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

For pharmaceutical use the compounds according to the invention are generally used for warm-blooded vertebrates, particularly humans, in doses of 0.01-100 mg/kg of body weight, preferably 0.1-15 mg/kg. For administration they are formulated with one or more conventional inert carriers and/or diluents, e.g. with corn starch, lactose, glucose, microcrystalline cellulose, magnesium stearate, polyvinylpyrrolidone, citric acid, tartaric acid, water, water/ethanol, water/glycerol, water/sorbitol, water/polyethyleneglycol, propyleneglycol, stearylalcohol, carboxymethylcellulose or fatty substances such as hard fat or suitable mixtures thereof in conventional galenic preparations such as plain or coated tablets, capsules, powders, suspensions, solutions, sprays or suppositories.

The following Examples are intended to illustrate the present invention without restricting it:

5

- 62 -

Preparation of the starting compounds:

10

Example I

4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-[3-(4-tert.butyloxycarbonyl-piperazino)-propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

15

500 mg of 4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-hydroxy-7-methoxy-quinazoline, 600 mg of 1-[3-(methanesulphonyloxy)propyl]-

4-tert.butyloxycarbonyl-piperazine (prepared by reacting

20

1-(3-hydroxypropyl)-4-tert.butyloxycarbonyl-piperazine with

methanesulphonic acid anhydride in the presence of triethyl-

amine) and 520 mg of potassium carbonate are stirred in 20 ml

of dimethylformamide for 8 hours at 80°C. A further 300 mg of

the piperazino compound are added and stirring is continued for

25

another 4 hours at 80°C. The reaction mixture is concentrated

by evaporation and the residue is divided between water and

ethyl acetate. The organic phase is concentrated by evaporation

and the residue is purified by chromatography on a silica gel

30

column with ethyl acetate.

Yield: 700 mg of (82 % of theory),

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.29 (silica gel; ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum: (M-H) = 544, 546

35

The following compounds are obtained analogously to Example I:

(1) 4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-[3-(1-tert.butyloxycarbonyl-4-piperidinyl)-propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

40

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.70 (silica gel; ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

(2) (S)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-{[1-(tert.butyloxycarbonyl)-pyrrolidine-2-yl]methoxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline

45

melting point: 178°C

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 527, 529 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

(3) (R)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-{[1-(tert.butyloxycarbonyl)-pyrrolidine-2-yl]methoxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline

50

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.65 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

55

5

- 63 -

Mass spectrum (EI):  $m/z$  = 528, 530  $[M]^+$

10

(4) (S)-4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-{[1-(tert.butyl-oxy-carbonyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]methoxy}-7-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

15

$R_f$  value: 0.76 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (ESI):  $m/z$  = 555, 557  $[M-H]^+$

20

(5) (S)-4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-{[1-(tert.butyl-oxy-carbonyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]methoxy}-7-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline

Melting point: 210-211.5°C

25

Mass spectrum (ESI):  $m/z$  = 569, 571  $[M-H]^+$

#### Example II

30

4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-[3-(1-piperazinyl)-propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

35

600 mg of 4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-[3-(4-tert.butyl-oxy-carbonylpiperazino)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline in 5 ml methylene chloride are mixed with 1.5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture is concentrated by evaporation and combined with 2N NaOH. It is decanted off the sticky residue, the residue is taken up in methanol, concentrated by evaporation and triturated with diethyl ether.

40

Yield: 280 mg of (50 % of theory),

$R_f$  value: 0.49 (aluminium oxide; ethyl acetate/methanol/conc. aqueous ammonia = 9:1:0.1)

45

Mass spectrum:  $(M+H)^+ = 446, 448$

The following compounds are obtained analogously to Example II:

50

(1) 4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-[3-(4-piperidinyl)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

55

$R_f$  value: 0.33 (aluminium oxide; ethyl acetate/methanol/conc. aqueous ammonia = 9:1:0.1)  
Mass spectrum:  $(M+H)^+ = 445, 447$

(2) (S)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[(pyrrolidine-2-yl)methoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline  
melting point: 143°C  
Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z = 429, 431 [M+H]^+$

(3) (R)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[(pyrrolidine-2-yl)methoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline  
 $R_f$  value: 0.21 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia solution = 9:1:0.1)

(4) (S)-4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[(pyrrolidine-2-yl)methoxy]-7-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline  
 $R_f$  value: 0.18 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)  
Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z = 455, 457 [M-H]^+$

(5) (S)-4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[(pyrrolidine-2-yl)methoxy]-7-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline  
 $R_f$  value: 0.36 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)  
Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z = 471, 473 [M+H]^+$

#### Example III

N-(3-Bromopropyl)sarcosine ethyl ester and N-(3-chloropropyl)-sarcosine ethyl ester  
6.9 ml of 1,3-dibromopropene in 20 ml acetonitrile are added dropwise to 2.4 g of sarcosine ethyl ester hydrochloride and 6 ml of N-ethyl-diisopropylamine in 50 ml of acetonitrile. After stirring overnight at ambient temperature the mixture is concentrated by evaporation and the residue is divided between ethyl acetate and water. The organic phase is concentrated by

5

- 65 -

evaporation and the residue is purified by chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1).

10

Yield: 0.77 g,

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.80 (silica gel; ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum: M<sup>+</sup> = 237, 239 and 193, 195

15

The following compounds are obtained analogously to Example III:

(1) (S)-N-(3-Bromopropyl)proline methyl ester and

20

(S)-N-(3-chloropropyl)proline methyl ester

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.84 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 249, 251 [M]<sup>+</sup> and 205, 207 [M]<sup>+</sup>

25

(2) (R)-N-(3-bromopropyl)proline methyl ester and

(R)-N-(3-chloropropyl)proline methyl ester

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.84 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

30

Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 249, 251 [M]<sup>+</sup> and 205, 207 [M]<sup>+</sup>

#### Example IV

35

#### 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-bromethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

7.00 g of potassium carbonate and 8.70 ml of dibromoethane are added to 3.50 g of 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-hydroxy-7-methoxy-quinazoline in 350 ml dimethylformamide. The reaction mixture is stirred for two hours at 85°C. Then the mixture is concentrated by evaporation and the oily residue is stirred with methanol. The bright yellow precipitate formed is suction filtered and dried.

40

Yield: 3.70 g (81 % of theory),

45

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.44 (silica gel, ethyl acetate)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 452, 454, 456 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

The following compounds are obtained analogously to Example IV:

50

55

5

- 66 -

(1) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-  
7-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

10  $R_f$  value: 0.74 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 478, 480, 482 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

15

(2) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-cyclopentyloxy-  
7-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-quinazoline

$R_f$  value: 0.65 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

20

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 478, 480, 482 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

#### Example V

25

#### 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-hydroxy-7-methoxy-quinazoline

34.50 g of 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-methylcarbonyloxy-  
7-methoxy-quinazoline in 350 ml ethanol are mixed with 35 ml of  
40% sodium hydroxide solution. The reaction mixture is stirred  
for three hours at ambient temperature. Then the mixture is  
concentrated by evaporation, the residue is taken up in water  
and neutralised with 2N hydrochloric acid. The precipitate  
formed is suction filtered and dried overnight in the circu-  
lating air drier at 50°C.

35

Yield: 28.30 g (92 % of theory),

melting point: 299°C

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 346, 348 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

40

The following compounds are obtained analogously to Example V:

(1) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-benzyloxy-7-hydroxy-  
quinazoline (The reaction is carried out with concentrated  
aqueous ammonia in methanol.)

45

$R_f$  value: 0.54 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 396, 398 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

50

55

5

- 67 -

(2) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-cyclopentyloxy-  
7-hydroxy-quinazoline (The reaction is carried out with  
concentrated aqueous ammonia in methanol.)  
 $R_f$  value: 0.53 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concen-  
trated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)  
Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 374, 376 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

#### Example VI

4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-methylcarbonyloxy-7-methoxy-  
quinazoline  
13.0 ml of 3-bromoaniline are added to 30.00 g of 4-chloro-  
6-methylcarbonyloxy-7-methoxy-quinazoline in 600 ml isopro-  
panol. The reaction mixture is refluxed for about four hours.  
The reaction mixture is then left to cool. The precipitate  
formed is suction filtered, washed thoroughly with cold iso-  
propanol and dried.  
Yield: 34.57 g (75 % of theory),  
melting point: 238°C  
Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 388, 390 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

The following compounds are obtained analogously to Example VI:

(1) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-benzyloxy-7-me-  
thylcarbonyloxy-quinazoline  
Melting point: 267-268 °C  
Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 438, 440 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

(2) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-cyclopentyloxy-  
7-methylcarbonyloxy-quinazoline  
 $R_f$  value: 0.73 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concen-  
trated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)  
Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 416, 418 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

5

- 68 -

Example VII

10

4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-oxiranylmethoxy-7-methoxy-  
quinazoline

15

1.50 ml of epibromohydrin are added to 5.00 g of  
4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-hydroxy-7-methoxy-quinazoline and  
4.75 g of potassium carbonate in 50 ml dimethylsulphoxide. The  
reaction mixture is stirred for two days at 50°C. Then it is  
diluted with about 150 ml of water and stirred for a further  
two hours. The precipitate formed is suction filtered and  
purified by chromatography on a silica gel column with ethyl  
acetate as eluant.

20

Yield: 850 mg (15 % of theory),

melting point: 230-245°C

25

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 402, 404 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

Example VIII

30

Dimethyl 2-(piperazin-1-yl)-succinate dihydrochloride

35

8.70 g of dimethyl 2-(4-benzyl-piperazin-1-yl)-succinate are  
hydrogenated in a mixture of 100 ml methanol and 4.50 ml of  
concentrated hydrochloric acid in the presence of 4.00 g of  
palladium (10% on activated charcoal) at ambient temperature  
until the calculated amount of hydrogen is taken up (about an  
hour). Then the catalyst is removed by suction filtering and  
the filtrate is concentrated by evaporation. A white gel-like  
solid is left.

40

Yield: 4.18 g

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.80 (Reversed phase ready-made TLC plate (E. Merck),  
acetonitrile/water/trifluoroacetic acid = 1:1:1)

45

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 231 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

The following compound is obtained analogously to Example VIII:

50

(1) dimethyl 3-(piperazin-1-yl)-glutarate dihydrochloride

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.80 (Reversed phase ready-made TLC plate (E. Merck),  
acetonitrile/water/trifluoroacetic acid = 1:1:1)

55



Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 254 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

Example IX

Dimethyl 2-(4-benzyl-piperazin-1-yl)-succinate

7.22 ml of dimethyl maleate are added to 10.0 ml of N-benzyl-piperazine in 15 ml dioxane. The reaction mixture is stirred for half an hour at ambient temperature. Then the mixture is refluxed for about a further three hours. For working up the reaction mixture is evaporated to dryness. An orange-yellow oil remains, which slowly crystallises.

Yield: 21.3 g (crude product),

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.85 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia solution = 90:10:0.5)

Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 320 [M]<sup>+</sup>

The following compound is obtained analogously to Example IX:

(1) dimethyl 3-(4-benzyl-piperazin-1-yl)-glutarate (reaction with dimethyl glutaconate)

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.49 (silica gel, cyclohexane/ethyl acetate = 1:1)

Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 334 [M]<sup>+</sup>

Example X

4-[(3-Chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-hydroxy-7-cyclopentyl-oxy-quinazoline

10 ml of trifluoroacetic acid are added to 1.95 g of 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-benzyloxy-7-cyclopentyl-oxy-quinazoline and the resulting dark brown solution is stirred at room temperature over night. Another 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid are added and the mixture is stirred for approximately 2.5 hours at 50°C until the reaction is completed. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo, diluted with water, and adjusted to pH 8-9 by addition of concentrated

aqueous ammonia. The precipitate is filtered off with suction, washed with water, and dried in vacuo at 60°C.

Yield: 1.45 g (92 % of theory),

$R_f$  value: 0.56 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol 9:1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 372, 374 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

The following compound is obtained analogously to Example X:

(1) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-hydroxy-7-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline

$R_f$  value: 0.73 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 386, 388 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

#### Example XI

4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-benzyloxy-7-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline

0.65 ml of bromocyclopentane are added to a mixture of 2.30 g 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-benzyloxy-7-hydroxy-quinazoline and 6.00 g potassium carbonate in 6 ml of N,N-dimethyl-formamide and the reaction mixture is stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. Another 3.00 g of potassium carbonate and 4 drops of bromocyclopentane are added, and the resulting mixture is stirred for 2.5 hours at 50°C. The reaction mixture is partitioned between ethyl acetate and water, and the aqueous layer is extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts are washed with concentrated aqueous sodium chloride solution, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated in vacuo. The oily residue is triturated with methanol, the resulting solid precipitate is filtered off, washed with cold methanol, and dried in vacuo.

Yield: 2.09 g (77 % of theory),

$R_f$  value: 0.63 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol 9:1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 462, 464 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

The following compound is obtained analogously to Example XI:

5

- 71 -

(1) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-benzyloxy-7-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline

10

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.84 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 478, 480 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

15

#### Example XII

##### 4-chloro-6-benzyloxy-7-methylcarbonyloxy-quinazoline

20

Prepared by reaction of 6-benzyloxy-7-methylcarbonyloxy-3H-quinazolin-4-one with thionyl chloride in the presence of catalytic amounts of N,N-dimethyl-formamide.

Yield: 98 % of theory,

25

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.86 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

The following compound is obtained analogously to Example XII:

30

(1) 4-chloro-6-cyclopentylloxy-7-methylcarbonyloxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.69 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

35

#### Example XIII

##### 6-benzyloxy-7-methylcarbonyloxy-3H-quinazolin-4-one

40

Prepared by reaction of 6-benzyloxy-7-hydroxy-3H-quinazolin-4-one with acetic anhydride in pyridine.

Yield: 68 % of theory,

Melting point: 231-233°C

45

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>-</sup>): m/z = 309 [M-H]<sup>-</sup>

The following compound is obtained analogously to Example XIII:

50

(1) 6-cyclopentylloxy-7-methylcarbonyloxy-3H-quinazolin-4-one

55

$R_f$  value: 0.57 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 287 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

#### Example XIV

##### 6-Benzoyloxy-7-hydroxy-3H-quinazolin-4-one

Prepared by reaction of 2-amino-4-hydroxy-5-benzoyloxy-benzoic acid with formamidine acetate in ethanol.

Yield: 72 % of theory,

$R_f$  value: 0.45 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 267 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

The following compound is obtained analogously to Example XIV:

##### (1) 6-cyclopentyloxy-7-hydroxy-3H-quinazolin-4-one

$R_f$  value: 0.42 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (EI):  $m/z$  = 246 [M]<sup>+</sup>

#### Example XV

##### 2-Amino-4-hydroxy-5-benzoyloxy-benzoic acid

Prepared by catalytic hydrogenation of 2-nitro-4-hydroxy-5-benzoyloxy-benzoic acid with Raney nickel in methanol.

Yield: 71 % of theory,

$R_f$  value: 0.53 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 258 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

The following compound is obtained analogously to Example XV:

##### (1) 2-amino-4-hydroxy-5-cyclopentyloxy-benzoic acid

$R_f$  value: 0.38 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z$  = 236 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

5

Example XVI

10

2-Nitro-4-hydroxy-5-benzyloxy-benzoic acid

15

4.8 g of sodium are added portionwise to a mixture of 20.30 g 6-nitro-benzo[1,3]dioxole-5-carboxylic acid and 81.2 ml of benzyl alcohol in 120 ml of dimethyl sulfoxide cooled in an ice/water bath. The reaction mixture is allowed to warm up to room temperature and stirred for approximately 21 hours. The brownish red solution is diluted with 600 ml of water and extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous layer is acidified with concentrated hydrochloric acid and stirred for two

20

hours at room temperature. The precipitate is filtered off, washed with water, and dried.

25

Yield: 18.63g (67 % of theory),

Melting point: 172-175°C

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 288 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

The following compound is obtained analogously to Example XVI:

30

(1) 2-nitro-4-hydroxy-5-cyclopentyloxy-benzoic acid

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.61 (silica gel, toluene/1,4-dioxane/ethanol/acetic acid = 90:10:10:6)

35

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 266 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

40

45

50

55

## Preparation of the end products:

Example 1

4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-{3-[4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-1-piperazinyl]propyloxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline

0.07 ml of methyl bromoacetate in 1 ml of acetonitrile is added dropwise to 250 mg of 4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-{3-(1-piperazinyl)propyloxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline and 0.13 ml N-ethyl-diisopropylamine in 5 ml of acetonitrile. After 2 hours' stirring at ambient temperature the mixture is concentrated by evaporation, mixed with water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic phases are washed with saline solution, then dried

with magnesium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation.

Yield: 150 mg (51 % of theory),

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.54 (silica gel; ethyl acetate/methanol/conc.

aqueous ammonia = 9:1:0.1)

Mass spectrum: (M-H) = 516, 518

The following compounds are obtained analogously to Example 1:

(1) 4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-{3-[1-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]propyloxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.79 (silica gel; ethyl acetate/methanol/conc.

aqueous ammonia = 9:1:0.1)

Mass spectrum: M<sup>+</sup> = 516, 518

(2) (S)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-([1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-pyrrolidin-2-yl]methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.68 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol/concentrated

aqueous ammonia solution = 9:1:0.1)

Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 514, 516 [M]<sup>+</sup>

(3) (R)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-([1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-pyrrolidin-2-yl]methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.75 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 514, 516 [M]<sup>+</sup>

(4) (S)-4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-({1-(methoxy-carbonyl)methyl}-pyrrolidin-2-yl)methoxy)-7-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.59 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 527, 529 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

(5) (S)-4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-({1-(methoxy-carbonyl)methyl}-pyrrolidin-2-yl)methoxy)-7-cyclopentyl-methoxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.67 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 541, 543 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

#### Example 2

4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-{3-[N-(ethoxycarbonylmethyl)-N-methylaminolpropyloxy]}-7-methoxy-quinazoline

380 mg of a mixture of N-(3-bromopropyl)sarcosine ethyl ester and N-(3-chloropropyl)sarcosine ethyl ester in 5 ml dimethylformamide are added dropwise to 500 mg of 4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-hydroxy-7-methoxy-quinazoline and 220 mg of potassium tert.butoxide in 15 ml dimethylformamide. After 3 hours' stirring at 80°C and standing overnight a further 110 mg of potassium tert.butoxide and 190 mg of the sarcosine mixture are added and the reaction mixture is stirred for 4 hours at 80°C. It is filtered, the filtrate is concentrated by evaporation, the residue is taken up in water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase is separated off, dried and concentrated by evaporation. The residue is purified by chromatography on a silica gel column.

Yield: 390 mg of (52 % of theory),

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.68 (silica gel; ethyl acetate/methanol/conc. aqueous ammonia = 9:1:0.1)

Mass spectrum: (M-H) = 475, 477

The following compounds are obtained analogously to Example 2:

(1) (S)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[3-(2-methoxycarbonyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.38 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 514, 516 [M]<sup>+</sup>

(2) (R)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[3-(2-methoxycarbonyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.41 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 514, 516 [M]<sup>+</sup>

### Example 3

4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

1.50 ml of diisopropyl-ethylamine and 1.10 ml of 1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazine are added to 1.00 g of 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-bromoethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline in 20 ml acetonitrile. The reaction mixture is stirred for two days at ambient temperature. The precipitate formed is filtered off and the filtrate is concentrated by evaporation. The residue is taken up in ethyl acetate and washed once with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and once with water. The organic phase is dried over magnesium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation. The crude product is purified on a silica gel column with ethyl acetate/ethanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia solution (9:1:0.1) as eluant.

Yield: 450 mg of (38 % of theory),

melting point: 155°C

Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 543, 545 [M]<sup>+</sup>

The following compounds are obtained analogously to Example 3:

(1) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.55 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)



5

Mass spectrum (EI):  $m/z = 488, 490 [M]^+$

10

(2) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{N,N-bis[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]amino}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

$R_f$  value: 0.38 (silica gel, ethyl acetate)

Mass spectrum (EI):  $m/z = 560, 562 [M]^+$

15

(3) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[1,2 bis(methoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

$R_f$  value: 0.61 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

20

Mass spectrum (EI):  $m/z = 601, 603 [M]^+$

(4) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[2-(4-{1-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-(methoxycarbonyl)-ethyl}-piperazin-1-yl)ethoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

25

$R_f$  value: 0.51 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z = 616, 618 [M+H]^+$

30

(5) (R)-4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-{2-[2-(methoxycarbonyl)-pyrrolidin-1-yl]-ethoxy}-7-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

$R_f$  value: 0.65 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

35

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z = 527, 529 [M-H]^+$

(6) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}-ethoxy)-7-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

40

$R_f$  value: 0.54 (silica gel, methylene chloride/methanol/concentrated aqueous ammonia = 90:10:0.1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z = 570, 572 [M-H]^+$

45

(7) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-cyclopentyloxy-7-(2-{N-(2-hydroxy-2-methyl-prop-1-yl)-N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-amino}-ethoxy)-quinazoline

50

$R_f$  value: 0.28 (silica gel, ethyl acetate)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>):  $m/z = 573, 575 [M-H]^+$

55

(8) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-cyclopentyloxy-  
7-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-quinazoline  
(This compound was obtained by treatment of the compound prepared by example 3(7) with toluene-4-sulfonic acid in toluene.)

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.23 (silica gel, ethyl acetate)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 527, 529 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

(9) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-cyclopentyloxy-  
7-[2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy]-  
quinazoline (The starting material 3-methylamino-dihydro-furan-2-one was prepared by reaction of 3-bromo-dihydro-furan-2-one with N-methylbenzylamine and subsequent hydrogenolytic removal of the benzyl group)

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.42 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 515, 517 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

(10) 4-[(3-bromo-phenyl)amino]-6-(2-[N-(2-hydroxy-2-methyl-prop-1-yl)-N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-amino]-ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(11) 4-[(3-bromo-phenyl)amino]-6-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.33 (silica gel, ethyl acetate)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 499, 500 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

(12) 4-[(3-bromo-phenyl)amino]-6-[2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline (The starting material 4-methylamino-dihydro-furan-2-one was prepared by reaction of 5H-furan-2-one with N-methyl-benzylamine and subsequent hydrogenolytic removal of the benzyl group)

R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.38 (silica gel, ethyl acetate/methanol = 9:1)

Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 485, 487 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

5

- 79 -

Example 4

10 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-  
piperazin-1-yl})-2-hydroxy-propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline  
0.16 ml of 1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazine are added to  
500 mg of 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-oxiranylmethoxy-7-methoxy-  
15 quinazoline in 5 ml ethanol. The reaction mixture is refluxed  
for about 6 hours. Then the mixture is concentrated by evapora-  
tion and the crude product is purified by chromatography on a  
silica gel column with ethyl acetate/ethanol/concentrated  
20 aqueous ammonia solution (9:1:0.1) as eluant.  
Yield: 97 mg of (14 % of theory),  
melting point: 118-122°C  
Mass spectrum (EI): m/z = 573, 575 [M]<sup>+</sup>

25

Example 5

4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-[4-(carboxymethyl)-piperazin-  
30 1-yl]ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline  
0.19 ml of 1N sodium hydroxide solution are added to 100 mg of  
4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-[4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-  
piperazin-1-yl]ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline in 0.30 ml of  
35 tetrahydrofuran. The reaction mixture is stirred for three  
hours at ambient temperature. Another 0.9 ml of 1N sodium  
hydroxide solution are added and the mixture is stirred  
overnight. Then it is neutralised with 1N hydrochloric acid and  
concentrated by evaporation. The solid residue is triturated  
40 with ethyl acetate and suction filtered.  
Yield: 100 mg (contains about 0.5 equivalents sodium chloride),  
R<sub>f</sub> value: 0.50 (Reversed phase ready-made TLC plate (E. Merck),  
acetonitrile/water/trifluoroacetic acid = 50:50:1)  
45 Mass spectrum (ESI<sup>+</sup>): m/z = 514, 516 [M-H]<sup>+</sup>

The following compounds may also be obtained analogously to the  
foregoing Examples and other methods known from the literature:

50

55

- (1) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (2) 4-[(3-methylphenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (3) 4-[(3-chlorophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (4) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (5) 4-[(indol-5-yl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (6) 4-[(1-phenylethyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (7) 4-[(3-ethynylphenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (8) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (9) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(hexyloxy carbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (10) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[2-(ethoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (11) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[3-(ethoxycarbonyl)propyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline
- (12) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-3-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

5

- 81 -

(13) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-pyrrolidin-2-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

10

(14) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(dimethoxyphosphoryl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

15

(15) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[(1-{[(methoxy)(methyl)phosphoryl]methyl}-piperidin-4-yl)methoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

20

(16) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[1,2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

25

(17) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[(1-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl}-piperidin-4-yl)methoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

30

(18) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{1-[1-(methoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

35

(19) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{1-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(20) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

40

(21) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

45

(22) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(23) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{1-[1,2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

50

(24) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[1,2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

55

(25) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[2-(4-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl}-piperazin-1-yl)ethoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(26) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[2-(1-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl}-piperidin-4-yl)ethoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(27) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-{2-[2-(methoxycarbonyl)-pyrrolidin-1-yl]ethoxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(28) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-{2-[2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-piperidin-1-yl]ethoxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(29) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{1-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(30) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(31) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(32) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(33) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}-2-hydroxy-propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(34) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}-2-hydroxy-propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(35) 4-[(3-methylphenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(36) 4-[(3-chlorophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

5

10

(37) 4-[(indol-5-yl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

15

(38) 4-[(1-phenylethyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

20

(39) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-[2-(methoxycarbonyl)-pyrrolidin-1-yl]propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

25

(41) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-ethoxy-quinazoline

30

(42) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-7-(2-methoxyethoxy)-quinazoline

35

(43) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-7-(2-methoxyethoxy)-quinazoline

40

(44) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-(2-methoxyethoxy)-quinazoline

45

(45) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-ethoxy-quinazoline

50

(46) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-7-ethoxy-quinazoline

55

(47) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-(2-methoxyethoxy)-quinazoline

(48) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{1-[(dimethoxyphosphoryl)-methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(49) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(dimethoxyphosphoryl)-methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(50) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[3-(4-{[(methoxy)(ethyl)phosphoryl]methyl}-piperazin-1-yl)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(51) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[3-(1-{[(methoxy)(ethyl)phosphoryl]methyl}-piperidin-4-yl)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(52) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[1,2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(53) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[3-(1-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl}-piperidin-4-yl)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(54) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(4-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}butyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(55) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(4-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}butyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(56) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(57) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{N,N-bis[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]amino}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(58) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-ethylamino}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(59) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-(cyclopropylmethyl)-amino}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(60) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-amino}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline



(61) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-cyclopropyl-amino}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(62) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{N-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(63) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{N-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(64) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{N,N-bis[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]amino}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(65) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-amino}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(66) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(4-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}butyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(67) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(4-{N,N-bis[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]amino}butyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(68) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({4-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-oxo-morpholin-6-yl}methyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(69) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[(4-methyl-2-oxo-morpholin-6-yl)methyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(70) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[(2-oxo-morpholin-6-yl)methyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(71) 4-[(4-amino-3,5-dibromo-phenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(72) 4-[(4-amino-3,5-dibromo-phenyl)amino]-6-(3-{1-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

5

10

(73) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6,7-bis(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}ethoxy)-quinazoline

15

(74) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6,7-bis(3-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}propyloxy)-quinazoline

20

(75) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[3-(morpholino)propyloxy]-7-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methoxy]-quinazoline

25

(76) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[2-(morpholino)ethoxy]-7-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methoxy]-quinazoline

30

(77) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

35

(78) 4-[(3-methylphenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

40

(79) 4-[(3-chlorophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

45

(80) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

50

(81) 4-[(indol-5-yl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

55

(82) 4-[(1-phenylethyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(83) 4-[(3-ethynylphenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(84) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

5

(85) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(hexyloxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

10

(86) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[2-(ethoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline.....

15

(87) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[3-(ethoxycarbonyl)propyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

20

(88) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-3-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(89) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-pyrrolidin-2-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

25

(90) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(dimethoxyphosphoryl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

30

(91) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[{(methoxy)(methyl)phosphoryl}methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

35

(92) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[1,2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

40

(93) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

45

(94) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{1-[1-(methoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(95) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{1-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

50

(96) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{4-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

55

5

(97) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

10

(98) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

15

(99) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{1-[1,2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

20

(100) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{4-[1,2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

25

(101) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[2-(4-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl}-piperazin-1-yl)ethoxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

30

(102) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[2-(1-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl}-piperidin-4-yl)ethoxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

35

(103) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-[2-(methoxycarbonyl)-pyrrolidin-1-yl]ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

40

(104) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-[2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-piperidin-1-yl]ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

45

(105) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{1-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(106) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

50

(107) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

55

(108) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

5

10

(109) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}-2-hydroxy-propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

15

(110) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}-2-hydroxy-propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

20

(111) 4-[(3-methylphenyl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

25

(112) 4-[(3-chlorophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

30

(113) 4-[(indol-5-yl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

35

(115) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-{3-[2-(methoxycarbonyl)-pyrrolidin-1-yl]propyloxy}-6-methoxy-quinazoline

40

(116) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-{3-[3-(methoxycarbonyl)-4-methyl-piperazin-1-yl]propyloxy}-6-methoxy-quinazoline

45

(117) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-ethoxy-quinazoline

50

(118) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}methoxy)-6-(2-methoxyethoxy)-quinazoline

55

(119) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}ethoxy)-6-(2-methoxyethoxy)-quinazoline

5

(120) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-6-(2-methoxyethoxy)-quinazoline

10

(121) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-6-ethoxy-quinazoline

15

(122) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-6-ethoxy-quinazoline

20

(123) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-6-(2-methoxyethoxy)-quinazoline

25

(124) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{1-[(dimethoxyphosphoryl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

30

(125) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[(dimethoxyphosphoryl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

35

(126) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[3-(4-{[(methoxy)(ethyl)phosphoryl]methyl}-piperazin-1-yl)propyloxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

40

(127) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[3-(1-{[(methoxy)(ethyl)phosphoryl]methyl}-piperidin-4-yl)propyloxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(128) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[1,2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

45

(129) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[3-(1-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl}-piperidin-4-yl)propyloxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

50

(130) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(4-{1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}butyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(131) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(4-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}butyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

55

(132) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(133) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{N,N-bis[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]amino}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(134) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-ethylamino}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(135) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-(cyclopropylmethyl)-amino}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(136) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-amino}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(137) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-cyclopropyl-amino}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(138) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(2-{N-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}ethoxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(139) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{N-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(140) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{N,N-bis[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]amino}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(141) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(3-{[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-amino}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(142) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(4-{N-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-N-methylamino}butyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(143) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-(4-{N,N-bis[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]amino}butyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

5

- 92 -

(144) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[(4-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-2-oxo-morpholin-6-yl)methyloxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

10

(145) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[(4-methyl-2-oxo-morpholin-6-yl)methyloxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

15

(146) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[(2-oxo-morpholin-6-yl)methyloxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

20

(147) 4-[(4-amino-3,5-dibromo-phenyl)amino]-7-(3-{4-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

25

(148) 4-[(4-amino-3,5-dibromo-phenyl)amino]-7-(3-{1-[(methoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperidin-4-yl}propyloxy)-6-methoxy-quinazoline

30

(149) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[3-(morpholino)propyloxy]-6-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methoxy]-quinazoline

35

(150) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-7-[2-(morpholino)ethoxy]-6-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methoxy]-quinazoline

40

(151) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[2-(2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)ethoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

45

(152) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[3-(2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

50

(153) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[2-(3-methyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)ethoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

55

(154) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[2-(5,5-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)ethoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(155) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-cyclopropylmethoxy-quinazoline



5

- 93 -

10

(156) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-cyclobutyloxy-quinazoline

15

(157) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

20

(158) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-cyclohexyloxy-quinazoline

25

(159) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline

30

(160) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-cyclohexylmethoxy-quinazoline

35

(161) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

40

(162) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(phenyloxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

45

(163) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(indan-5-yloxy-carbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(164) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(cyclohexyloxy-carbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(165) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(cyclohexylmethoxy-carbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

50

(166) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-cyclopropylmethoxy-7-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)quinazoline

(167) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-cyclobutyloxy-7-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)quinazoline

55

(168) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-cyclopentyloxy-7-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)quinazoline

(169) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-cyclopentylmethoxy-7-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)quinazoline

(170) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-cyclohexylmethoxy-7-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)quinazoline

(171) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-cyclohexyloxy-7-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)quinazoline

(172) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

(173) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-7-cyclobutyloxy-quinazoline

(174) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-7-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

(175) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-7-cyclohexyloxy-quinazoline

(176) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-7-cyclopropylmethoxy-quinazoline

(177) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-7-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline

(178) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-7-cyclohexylmethoxy-quinazoline

(179) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-{2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline

5

- 95 -

10

(180) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-{2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy}-7-cyclopentyl-oxy-quinazoline

15

(181) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-{2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy}-7-cyclopentyl-methoxy-quinazoline

20

(182) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-{2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline

25

(183) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-{2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy}-7-cyclopentyl-oxy-quinazoline

30

(184) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-{2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy}-7-cyclopentyl-methoxy-quinazoline

35

(185) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[3-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline

40

(186) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[3-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-propyloxy]-7-cyclopentyl-oxy-quinazoline

(187) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-6-[3-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-propyloxy]-7-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline

45

(188) (R)-4-[(1-phenyl-ethyl)amino]-6-[3-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-propyloxy]-7-cyclopentyl-oxy-quinazoline

50

(189) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

55

5

- 96 -

(190) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-6-cyclobutyloxy-quinazoline

10

(191) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-6-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

15

(192) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-6-cyclohexyloxy-quinazoline

20

(193) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-6-cyclopropylmethoxy-quinazoline

25

(194) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-6-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline

30

(195) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-ethoxy]-6-cyclohexylmethoxy-quinazoline

35

(196) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

40

(197) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy]-6-cyclopentyl-oxy-quinazoline

45

(198) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy]-6-cyclopentyl-methoxy-quinazoline

50

(199) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

55

(200) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy]-6-cyclopentyl-oxy-quinazoline

(201) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-{2-[N-(2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-N-methyl-amino]-ethoxy}-6-cyclopentyl-methoxy-quinazoline

(202) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[3-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-propyloxy]-6-methoxy-quinazoline

(203) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[3-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-propyloxy]-6-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

(204) 4-[(3-chloro-4-fluoro-phenyl)amino]-7-[3-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-propyloxy]-6-cyclopentylmethoxy-quinazoline

(205) (R)-4-[(1-phenyl-ethyl)amino]-7-[3-(6,6-dimethyl-2-oxo-morpholin-4-yl)-propyloxy]-6-cyclopentyloxy-quinazoline

#### Example 6

#### Coated tablets containing 75 mg of active substance

1 tablet core contains:

|                              |               |
|------------------------------|---------------|
| active substance             | 75.0 mg       |
| calcium phosphate            | 93.0 mg       |
| corn starch                  | 35.5 mg       |
| polyvinylpyrrolidone         | 10.0 mg       |
| hydroxypropylmethylcellulose | 15.0 mg       |
| magnesium stearate           | <u>1.5 mg</u> |
|                              | 230.0 mg      |

#### Preparation:

The active substance is mixed with calcium phosphate, corn starch, polyvinylpyrrolidone, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose and half the specified amount of magnesium stearate. Blanks 13 mm in diameter are produced in a tablet-making machine and these are then rubbed through a screen with a mesh size of 1.5 mm

5 using a suitable machine and mixed with the rest of the  
magnesium stearate. This granulate is compressed in a tablet-  
10 making machine to form tablets of the desired shape.

Weight of core: 230 mg

die: 9 mm, convex

The tablet cores thus produced are coated with a film  
15 consisting essentially of hydroxypropylmethylcellulose. The  
finished film-coated tablets are polished with beeswax.

Weight of coated tablet: 245 mg.

20 Example 7

Tablets containing 100 mg of active substance

Composition:

25 1 tablet contains:

|                         |               |
|-------------------------|---------------|
| active substance        | 100.0 mg      |
| lactose                 | 80.0 mg       |
| corn starch             | 34.0 mg       |
| 30 polyvinylpyrrolidone | 4.0 mg        |
| magnesium stearate      | <u>2.0 mg</u> |
|                         | 220.0 mg      |

35 Method of Preparation:

The active substance, lactose and starch are mixed together and  
uniformly moistened with an aqueous solution of the polyvinyl-  
pyrrolidone. After the moist composition has been screened  
40 (2.0 mm mesh size) and dried in a rack-type drier at 50°C it is  
screened again (1.5 mm mesh size) and the lubricant is added.  
The finished mixture is compressed to form tablets.

Weight of tablet: 220 mg

45 Diameter: 10 mm, biplanar, faceted on both sides  
and notched on one side.

5

- 99 -

Example 8

10

Tablets containing 150 mg of active substance

## Composition:

## 1 tablet contains:

15

active substance 150.0 mg

powdered lactose 89.0 mg

corn starch 40.0 mg

colloidal silica 10.0 mg

20

polyvinylpyrrolidone 10.0 mg

magnesium stearate 1.0 mg

300.0 mg

25

Preparation:

The active substance mixed with lactose, corn starch and silica is moistened with a 20% aqueous polyvinylpyrrolidone solution and passed through a screen with a mesh size of 1.5 mm. The granules, dried at 45°C, are passed through the same screen again and mixed with the specified amount of magnesium stearate. Tablets are pressed from the mixture.

30

Weight of tablet: 300 mg

35

die: 10 mm, flat

Example 9

40

Hard gelatine capsules containing 150 mg of active substance

## 1 capsule contains:

active substance 150.0 mg

corn starch (dried approx. 180.0 mg

45

lactose (powdered) approx. 87.0 mg

magnesium stearate 3.0 mg

approx. 420.0 mg

50

55

5

- 100 -

Preparation:

10

The active substance is mixed with the excipients, passed through a screen with a mesh size of 0.75 mm and homogeneously mixed using a suitable apparatus. The finished mixture is packed into size 1 hard gelatine capsules.

15

Capsule filling: approx. 320 mg  
Capsule shell: size 1 hard gelatine capsule.

Example 10

20

Suppositories containing 150 mg of active substance

25

1 suppository contains:

|                                       |                 |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| active substance                      | 150.0 mg        |
| polyethyleneglycol 1500               | 550.0 mg        |
| polyethyleneglycol 6000               | 460.0 mg        |
| polyoxyethylene sorbitan monostearate | <u>840.0 mg</u> |
|                                       | 2,000.0 mg      |

30

Preparation:

35

After the suppository mass has been melted the active substance is homogeneously distributed therein and the melt is poured into chilled moulds.

Example 11

40

Suspension containing 50 mg of active substance

45

100 ml of suspension contain:

|                                |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| active substance               | 1.00 g  |
| carboxymethylcellulose-Na-salt | 0.10 g  |
| methyl p-hydroxybenzoate       | 0.05 g  |
| propyl p-hydroxybenzoate       | 0.01 g  |
| glucose                        | 10.00 g |
| glycerol                       | 5.00 g  |
| 70% sorbitol solution          | 20.00 g |

50

55



5

- 101 -

|             |    |        |
|-------------|----|--------|
| flavouring  |    | 0.30 g |
| dist. water | ad | 100 ml |

10

Preparation:

The distilled water is heated to 70°C. The methyl and propyl p-hydroxybenzoates together with the glycerol and sodium salt of carboxymethylcellulose are dissolved therein with stirring. The solution is cooled to ambient temperature and the active substance is added and homogeneously dispersed therein with stirring. After the sugar, the sorbitol solution and the flavouring have been added and dissolved, the suspension is evacuated with stirring to eliminate air.

15

20

5 ml of suspension contain 50 mg of active substance.

25

Example 12Ampoules containing 10 mg active substance

## Composition:

|                               |    |         |
|-------------------------------|----|---------|
| active substance              |    | 10.0 mg |
| 0.01 N hydrochloric acid q.s. |    |         |
| double-distilled water        | ad | 2.0 ml  |

30

35

Preparation:

The active substance is dissolved in the necessary amount of 0.01 N HCl, made isotonic with common salt, filtered sterile and transferred into 2 ml ampoules.

40

Example 13Ampoules containing 50 mg of active substance

## Composition:

|                               |    |         |
|-------------------------------|----|---------|
| active substance              |    | 50.0 mg |
| 0.01 N hydrochloric acid q.s. |    |         |
| double-distilled water        | ad | 10.0 ml |

50

55

5

- 102 -

Preparation:

10

The active substance is dissolved in the necessary amount of 0.01 N HCl, made isotonic with common salt, filtered sterile and transferred into 10 ml ampoules.

Example 14

15

Capsules for powder inhalation containing 5 mg of active substance

20

1 capsule contains:

25

|                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| active substance       | 5.0 mg         |
| lactose for inhalation | <u>15.0 mg</u> |
|                        | 20.0 mg        |

Preparation:

30

The active substance is mixed with lactose for inhalation. The mixture is packed into capsules in a capsule-making machine (weight of the empty capsule approx. 50 mg).

35

weight of capsule: 70.0 mg  
size of capsule = 3

Example 15

40

Solution for inhalation for hand-held nebulisers containing 2.5 mg active substance

1 spray contains:

45

50

|                           |              |
|---------------------------|--------------|
| active substance          | 2.500 mg     |
| benzalkonium chloride     | 0.001 mg     |
| 1N hydrochloric acid q.s. |              |
| ethanol/water (50/50)     | ad 15.000 mg |

55

5

Preparation:

10

The active substance and benzalkonium chloride are dissolved in ethanol/water (50/50). The pH of the solution is adjusted with 1N hydrochloric acid. The resulting solution is filtered and transferred into suitable containers for use in hand-held nebulisers (cartridges).

15

Contents of the container: 4.5 g

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

## Claims

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

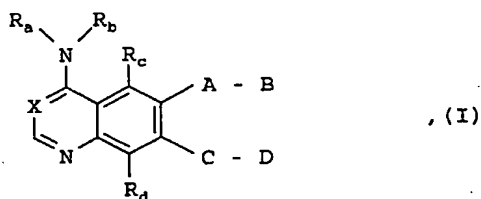
45

50

55

Patent Claims

1. Bicyclic heterocycles of general formula



wherein

$R_a$  denotes a hydrogen atom or a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

$R_b$  denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom,

a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy,  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl,  $C_{4-6}$ -cycloalkoxy,  $C_{2-5}$ -alkenyl or  $C_{2-5}$ -alkynyl group,

an aryl, aryloxy, arylmethyl or arylmethoxy group,

a  $C_{3-5}$ -alkenyloxy or  $C_{3-5}$ -alkynyloxy group, whilst the unsaturated moiety may not be linked to the oxygen atom,

a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphenyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphinyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonyloxy, trifluoromethylsulphenyl, trifluoromethylsulphinyl or trifluoromethylsulphonyl group,

a methyl or methoxy group substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine atoms,

an ethyl or ethoxy group substituted by 1 to 5 fluorine atoms,

a cyano or nitro group or an amino group optionally substituted by one or two C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups, whilst the substituents may be identical or different,

or R<sub>1</sub> together with R<sub>2</sub>, if they are bound to adjacent carbon atoms, denote a -CH=CH-CH=CH, -CH=CH-NH or -CH=N-NH group and

R<sub>3</sub> denotes a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, trifluoromethyl or C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group,

R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>4</sub>, which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine or chlorine atom, a methoxy group or a methyl group optionally substituted by a methoxy, dimethyl-amino, diethylamino, pyrrolidino, piperidino or morpholino group,

X denotes a methine group substituted by a cyano group or a nitrogen atom,

A denotes an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -O-C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinafter defined and the oxygen atom of the abovementioned -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

an -O-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-

5

- 106 -

10

(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino group and the oxygen atom of the abovementioned-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

15

a -C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group,

20

an -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst the -NR<sub>4</sub>- moiety of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring, and

25

R<sub>4</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group,

an oxygen atom, this being linked to a carbon atom of the group B, or

30

a NR<sub>4</sub> group, the latter being linked to a carbon atom of the group B and R<sub>4</sub> being as hereinbefore defined,

35

B denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub>, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein in each case the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst

40

R<sub>5</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

45

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group which may be substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>) or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>) group,

50

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino or di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino group or by a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group, whilst in the abovementioned 6- to 7-membered alkyleneimino groups in each case a methylene group in the

55

4 position may be replaced by an oxygen or sulphur atom, by  
a sulphinyl, sulphonyl, imino or N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-imino group,

a C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl or C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl group,

R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub>, which may be identical or different, in each  
case denote a hydrogen atom,

a C<sub>1-8</sub>-alkyl group which may be substituted from position 2  
onwards by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino or  
di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino group or by a 4- to 7-membered alky-  
leneimino group, whilst in the abovementioned 6- to 7-mem-  
bered alkyleneimino groups in each case a methylene group  
in the 4 position may be replaced by an oxygen or sulphur  
atom, by a sulphinyl, sulphonyl, imino or N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-  
imino group,

a C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkyl group optionally substituted by 1 or 2  
methyl groups,

a C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkenyl or C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkynyl group, whilst the unsaturated  
moiety may not be linked to the oxygen atom,

a C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or R<sub>9</sub>CO-O-  
(R<sub>9</sub>CR<sub>2</sub>) group, whilst

R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, which may be identical or different, in each  
case denote a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group and

R<sub>9</sub> denotes a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy or  
C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkoxy group,

and R<sub>8</sub> denotes a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, aryl or aryl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group,

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by  
an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>), (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>), R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-



5

- 108 -

(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

10

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>OCO group and an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

15

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>), (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>), R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined and

20

25

R<sub>10</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, formyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylcarbonyl or C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylsulphonyl group,

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group and an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>10</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

30

35

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in each case in the 4 position by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

40

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by one or two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group and an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

45

50

55

5

- 109 -

10

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted in each case by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

20

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5 to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at a carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ ,  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ ,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

25

30

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5 to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at carbon atoms by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

35

40

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

45

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl group, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1..4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an

50

55

5

- 110 -

$R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

10

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 to 4  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups,

15

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups in each case are linked to a carbon atom of the group A,

20

an  $R_{11}NR_9$  group wherein  $R_9$  is as hereinbefore defined and

25

$R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-4-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-5-yl group optionally substituted by one or two methyl groups,

30

or A and B together denotes a hydrogen, fluorine or chlorine atom,

35

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkoxy group,

a  $C_{2-6}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino, 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-homopiperazino or 1-imidazolyl group,

45

a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted by a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst  $R_{10}$  is as hereinbefore defined,

50

55

5 a C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>6</sub>) or (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>6</sub>) group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>8</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

10 a C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group,

15 an amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-homopiperazino group,

20 a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

25 C denotes an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -O-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned group in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

30 an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined and the oxygen atom of the abovementioned-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

35 an -O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino group and the oxygen atom of the abovementioned-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

40 a -C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene group,

45 an -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst

5

- 112 -

10

the -NR<sub>4</sub>- moiety of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring and R<sub>4</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

15

an oxygen atom, which is linked to a carbon atom of the group D, or

20

a NR<sub>4</sub> group, where the latter is linked to a carbon atom of the group D and R<sub>4</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

25

D denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub>, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein in each case the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>5</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

30

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>), (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>), R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

35

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>OCO group and an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

40

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>), (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>), R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>10</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

45

50

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups

55

5

- 113 -

or by an  $R_6$ O-CO group and an  $R_6$ O-CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

10

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in each case in the 4 position by an  $R_6$ O-CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6$ O-CO)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7$ O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7$ O-PO- $R_9$ )- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6$ O-CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6$ O-CO)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7$ O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7$ O-PO- $R_9$ )- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6$ O-CO or  $R_6$ O-CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6$ O-CO group and an  $R_6$ O-CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

20

25

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted in each case by an  $R_6$ O-CO,  $(R_7$ O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>),  $(R_7$ O-PO- $R_9$ ),  $R_6$ O-CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6$ O-CO)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7$ O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7$ O-PO- $R_9$ )- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

30

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted by two  $R_6$ O-CO or  $R_6$ O-CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6$ O-CO group and an  $R_6$ O-CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

35

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at a carbon atom by an  $R_6$ O-CO,  $(R_7$ O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>),  $(R_7$ O-PO- $R_9$ ),  $R_6$ O-CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6$ O-CO)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7$ O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7$ O-PO- $R_9$ )- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

40

45

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally

50

55

5

- 114 -

10

substituted at carbon atoms by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

20

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by one or two

25

$R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  group and an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

30

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 to 4  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups,

35

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups are in each case linked to a carbon atom of the group C,

40

an  $R_{11}NR_5$  group wherein  $R_5$  and  $R_{11}$  are as hereinbefore defined, or

45

C and D together denote a hydrogen, fluorine or chlorine atom,

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkoxy group,

50

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-

55

5

- 115 -

10

amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino, 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-homopiperazino or 1-imidazolyl group,

15

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group R<sub>10</sub>, whilst R<sub>10</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

20

a C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>) or (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>8</sub>) group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>8</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

25

a C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group

30

an amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, hexahydroazepino, morpholino, homomorpholino, piperazino, 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino, homopiperazino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-homopiperazino group,

35

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

40

with the proviso that at least one of the groups B or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an optionally substituted 2-oxo-morpholinyl group, an (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>) or (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>8</sub>) group, or

45

that at least one of the groups B or D contains an optionally substituted 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-4-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-5-yl group, or

50

that at least one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group and additionally one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains a primary, secondary or tertiary amino

55



5

- 116 -

function, whilst the nitrogen atom of this amino function is not linked to a carbon atom of an aromatic group,

10

whilst by the aryl moieties mentioned in the definition of the abovementioned groups is meant a phenyl group which may in each case be monosubstituted by  $R_{12}$ , mono-, di- or trisubstituted by  $R_{13}$  or monosubstituted by  $R_{12}$  and additionally mono- or disubstituted by  $R_{13}$ , whilst the substituents may be identical or different and

15

20

$R_{12}$  denotes a cyano, carboxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxycarbonyl, aminocarbonyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylaminocarbonyl, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-aminocarbonyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphenyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphinyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonyl, hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonyloxy, trifluoromethyloxy, nitro, amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylcarbonylamino, N- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkylcarbonylamino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonylamino, N- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkylsulphonylamino, aminosulphonyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylaminosulphonyl or di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-aminosulphonyl group or a carbonyl group which is substituted by a 5- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group, whilst in the abovementioned 6- to 7-membered alkyleneimino groups in each case a methylene group in the 4 position may be replaced by an oxygen or sulphur atom, by a sulphinyl, sulphonyl, imino or N- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-imino group, and

25

30

35

40

$R_{13}$  denotes a fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, trifluoromethyl or  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group or

two groups  $R_{13}$ , if they are bound to adjacent carbon atoms, together denote a  $C_{3-5}$ -alkylene, methylenedioxy or 1,3-butadien-1,4-ylene group,

45

the tautomers, the stereoisomers and the salts thereof.

50

55

2. Bicyclic heterocycles of general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

$R_a$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_b$  denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom,

a methyl, ethyl, hydroxy, methoxy, ethoxy, amino, cyano, vinyl or ethynyl group,

an aryl, aryloxy, arylmethyl or arylmethoxy group,

a methyl or methoxy group substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine atoms or

$R_1$  together with  $R_2$ , if they are bound to adjacent carbon atoms, denote a  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{NH}-$  or  $-\text{CH}=\text{N}-\text{NH}-$  group and

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

$R_c$  and  $R_d$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

A denotes an  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}-$ alkylene,  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{4-7}-$ cycloalkylene,  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-3}-$ alkylene- $\text{C}_{3-7}-$ cycloalkylene,  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{4-7}-$ cycloalkylene- $\text{C}_{1-3}-$ alkylene or  $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-3}-$ alkylene- $\text{C}_{3-7}-$ cycloalkylene- $\text{C}_{1-3}-$ alkylene group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

5

- 118 -

10

an -O-C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned-O-C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring, or

15

an oxygen atom, this being linked to a carbon atom of the group B,

20

B denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub>, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein in each case the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 4 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst

25

R<sub>5</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom,

30

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group which may be substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group,

35

a C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkyl group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy or C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group,

a C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl or C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl group,

40

R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub>, which may be identical or different, in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

45

a C<sub>1-8</sub>-alkyl group which may be substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy or di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino group or by a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group, whilst in the abovementioned 6- to 7-membered alkyleneimino groups in each case a methylene group in the 4 position may be replaced by an oxygen atom or by an N-(C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl)-imino group,

50

a C<sub>4-6</sub>-cycloalkyl group,

55

a C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkenyl or C<sub>3-5</sub>-alkynyl group, whilst the unsaturated moiety may not be linked to the oxygen atom,

a C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or R<sub>9</sub>CO-O-(R<sub>6</sub>CR<sub>7</sub>) group, whilst

R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, which may be identical or different, in each case denote a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group and

R<sub>9</sub> denotes a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy or C<sub>5-6</sub>-cycloalkoxy group,

and R<sub>8</sub> denotes a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group,

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined and

R<sub>10</sub> denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>10</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which in each case is substituted in the 4 position by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-

5

- 120 -

(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

10

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by one or two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

15

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted in each case by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

20

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

25

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group R<sub>10</sub>, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at a carbon atom by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>10</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

30

35

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group R<sub>10</sub>, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>10</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

40

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or (R<sub>6</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>9</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

45

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or bis-

50

55

(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by one or two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 to 4 C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl groups,

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups in each case are linked to a carbon atom of the group A,

an R<sub>11</sub>NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein R<sub>5</sub> is as hereinbefore defined and

R<sub>11</sub> denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-4-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-5-yl group optionally substituted by one or two methyl groups,

or A and B together denote a hydrogen atom,

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group,

a C<sub>2-4</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazino or 4-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-piperazino group,

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group R<sub>10</sub>, whilst R<sub>10</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

5

- 122 -

a C<sub>1,7</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>1,7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkoxy group,

10

C denotes an -O-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkylene, -O-C<sub>1,7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>1,3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>1,7</sub>-cycloalkylene, -O-C<sub>1,7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1,3</sub>-alkylene or -O-C<sub>1,3</sub>-alkylene-C<sub>1,7</sub>-cycloalkylene-C<sub>1,3</sub>-alkylene group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned group in each case is

15

linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

an -O-C<sub>2,4</sub>-alkylene group which is substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned-O-C<sub>2,4</sub>-alkylene groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring, or

20

an oxygen atom, which is linked to a carbon atom of the group D,

25

D denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub>, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>8</sub>)-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein in each case the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 4 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two C<sub>1,2</sub>-alkyl groups or by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,2</sub>-alkyl group, whilst R<sub>5</sub> to R<sub>8</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

30

35

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkyl or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

40

a 4- to 7-membered alkyleneimino group which is substituted by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

45

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO, R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkyl or bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1,4</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>10</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

50

55

5

- 123 -

10

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by two  $R_6$ -CO or  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in each case in the 4 position by an  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6$ -CO)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_6$ -PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_6$ -PO- $R_8$ )- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  are as hereinbefore defined,

20

a piperazino or homopiperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6$ -CO)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group and is additionally substituted at cyclic carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6$ -CO or  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

25

30

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted in each case by an  $R_6$ -CO,  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, or bis- $(R_6$ -CO)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

35

a morpholino or homomorpholino group which is substituted by two  $R_6$ -CO or  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

40

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings in each case are additionally substituted at a carbon atom by an  $R_6$ -CO,  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6$ -CO)- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

45

50

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by two  $R_6$ -CO or  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_{10}$  are as hereinbefore defined,

55



5

- 124 -

10

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_8)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  are as hereinbefore defined,

15

a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered rings are in each case additionally substituted at carbon atoms by one or two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

20

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 to 4  $C_{1-3}$ -alkyl groups,

25

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a hydrogen atom, by a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups are in each case linked to a carbon atom of the group C,

30

an  $R_{11}NR_5$  group wherein  $R_5$  and  $R_{11}$  are as hereinbefore defined, or

35

C and D together denote a hydrogen atom,

40

a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group,

45

a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, amino,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkylamino, di- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-amino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazino or 4- $(C_{1-4}$ -alkyl)-piperazino group,

50

a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted by a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by the group  $R_{10}$ , whilst  $R_{10}$  is as hereinbefore defined,

55

5

- 125 -

a C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group,  
whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

10

a C<sub>4-7</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkoxy group

15

with the proviso that at least one of the groups B or D or A  
together with B or C together with D contains an optionally  
substituted 2-oxo-morpholinyl group, a (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>) or  
(R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>9</sub>) group, or

20

that at least one of the groups B or D contains an optionally  
substituted 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-  
4-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-3-yl, 2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-4-yl or  
2-oxo-tetrahydropyran-5-yl group, or

25

that at least one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with  
B or C together with D contains an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group and additional-  
ly one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C  
together with D contains a primary, secondary or tertiary amino  
function, whilst the nitrogen atom of this amino function is  
not linked to a carbon atom of an aromatic group,

30

35

whilst by the aryl moieties mentioned in the definition of the  
abovementioned groups is meant a phenyl group which in each  
case may be monosubstituted by R<sub>12</sub>, mono- or disubstituted by  
R<sub>11</sub>, or monosubstituted by R<sub>12</sub> and additionally mono- or disub-  
stituted by R<sub>11</sub>, whilst the substituents may be identical or  
different and

40

R<sub>12</sub> denotes a cyano, C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkoxycarbonyl, aminocarbonyl,  
C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkylaminocarbonyl, di-(C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl)-aminocarbonyl,  
C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkylsulphenyl, C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkylsulphinyl, C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkylsulphonyl,  
hydroxy, nitro, amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylamino or di-(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-amino  
group and

45

50

R<sub>11</sub> denotes a fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, a  
C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl, trifluoromethyl or C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkoxy group or

55

5

- 126 -

10

two groups  $R_{13}$ , if they are bound to adjacent carbon atoms, together denote a  $C_{3,5}$ -alkylene, methylenedioxy or 1,3-butadien-1,4-ylene group,

15

the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof.

2. Bicyclic heterocycles of general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

20

$R_a$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

25

$R_b$  denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_5$ , whilst

30

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

a methyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxy, ethynyl or cyano group and

35

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_c$  and  $R_d$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

40

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

45

A denotes an  $-O-C_{1,4}$ -alkylene or  $-O-CH_2-CH(OH)-CH_2$  group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

50

B denotes an  $R_eO-CO$ -alkylene- $NR_f$  group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 or 2 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by an  $R_eO-CO$  or  $R_eO-CO$ -methyl group, whilst

55

$R_5$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

a  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group which may be substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  group,

a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkyl group which is substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group,

a  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkylmethyl group and

$R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_6CO-O-(R_6CR_6)$  group, whilst

$R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom or a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

$R_7$  denotes a hydrogen atom and

$R_8$  denotes a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, cyclopentyloxy or cyclohexyloxy group,

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and

$R_{10}$  denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

5

10

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

15

$R_7$  and  $R_8$ , which may be identical or different, in each case denote a hydrogen atom, a methyl, ethyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_3CO-O-(R_6CR_6)$  group, whilst

20

$R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,  
and  $R_3$  denotes a methyl or ethyl group,

25

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

30

a morpholino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

35

a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

40

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

45

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a methyl, ethyl or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups in each case are linked to a carbon atom of the group A,

50

a  $R_{11}N(C_{1-2}$ -alkyl) group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group, or

55

5  
10 A and B together denote a hydrogen atom, a methoxy, ethoxy or 2-methoxy-ethoxy group,

a C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkoxy group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO group, whilst R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

15 a C<sub>4-6</sub>-cycloalkoxy or C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkoxy group,

20 C denotes an -O-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkylene or -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH(OH)-CH<sub>2</sub> group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

25 D denotes an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-alkylene-NR<sub>5</sub> group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 or 2 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-methyl group, whilst R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

30 a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

35 a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by two R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl groups wherein R<sub>6</sub> is as hereinbefore defined,

40 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group R<sub>10</sub> and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO or R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-2</sub>-alkyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>10</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

45 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an R<sub>6</sub>O-CO-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, bis-(R<sub>6</sub>O-CO)-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-OR<sub>8</sub>)-methyl or (R<sub>7</sub>O-PO-R<sub>8</sub>)-methyl group wherein R<sub>6</sub> to R<sub>8</sub> are as hereinbefore defined,

50

55

5

- 130 -

10

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

15

a morpholino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

20

a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_8)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  are as hereinbefore defined,

25

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

30

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a methyl, ethyl or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups are in each case linked to a carbon atom of the group C, or

35

a  $R_{11}N(C_{1-2}$ -alkyl) group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group, or

40

C and D together denote a hydrogen atom, a methoxy, ethoxy or 2-methoxy-ethoxy group,

45

a  $C_{1-2}$ -alkoxy group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a  $C_{4-6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-3}$ -alkoxy group

50

with the proviso that at least one of the groups B or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an optionally substituted 2-oxo-morpholinyl group, a  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$  or  $(R_7O-PO-R_8)$  group, or

55

5

- 131 -

10

15

that at least one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains an  $R_4O-CO$  group and additionally one of the groups A, B, C or D or A together with B or C together with D contains a primary, secondary or tertiary amino function, whilst the nitrogen atom of this amino function is not linked to a carbon atom of an aromatic group,

the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof.

20

3. Bicyclic heterocycles of general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

25

$R_a$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

30

$R_b$  denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst

35

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

a methyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxy, ethynyl or cyano group and

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

40

$R_c$  and  $R_d$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

45

A denotes an  $-O-C_{1-4}$ -alkylene or  $-O-CH_2-CH(OH)-CH_2$  group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

50

B denotes an  $R_4O-CO$ -alkylene- $NR_5$  group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 or 2 carbon

55



5

- 132 -

atoms, may additionally be substituted by an  $R_6$ -CO or  $R_6$ -CO-methyl group, whilst

10

$R_5$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

15

a  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group which may be substituted by an  $R_6$ -CO group,

20

a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkyl group which is substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group,

a  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkylmethyl group and

25

$R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

a  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_6$ -CO-O- $(R_6CR_2)$  group, whilst

30

$R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom or a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group,

$R_7$  denotes a hydrogen atom and

35

$R_8$  denotes a  $C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl,  $C_{1-4}$ -alkoxy, cyclopentyloxy or cyclohexyloxy group,

40

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an  $R_6$ -CO or  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

45

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by two  $R_6$ -CO or  $R_6$ -CO- $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

50

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an

55

$R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and

$R_{10}$  denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

$R_7$  and  $R_8$ , which may be identical or different, in each case denote a hydrogen atom, a methyl, ethyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_9CO-O-(R_9CR_9)$  group, whilst

$R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

and  $R_9$  denotes a methyl or ethyl group,

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group and is additionally substituted at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a morpholino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_7O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  $(R_7O-PO-R_9)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a methyl, ethyl or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpho-

linyl groups in each case are linked to a carbon atom of the group A, or

a  $R_{11}N(C_{1-2}\text{-alkyl})$  group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group, and

C and D together denote a hydrogen atom, a methoxy, ethoxy, 2-methoxy-ethoxy,  $C_{4-6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-3}$ -alkoxy group,

the tautomers, the stereoisomers and the salts thereof.

4. Bicyclic heterocycles of general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

$R_a$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_b$  denotes a phenyl, benzyl or 1-phenylethyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom,

a methyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxy, ethynyl or cyano group and

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_c$  and  $R_d$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

A and B together denote a hydrogen atom, a methoxy, ethoxy, 2-methoxy-ethoxy,  $C_{4-6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-3}$ -alkoxy group,

C denotes an  $-O-C_{1,4}$ -alkylene or  $-O-CH_2-CH(OH)-CH_2$  group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring, and

D denotes an  $R_4O-CO$ -alkylene- $NR_3$  group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 or 2 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by an  $R_4O-CO$  or  $R_4O-CO$ -methyl group, whilst

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

a  $C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group which may be substituted by an  $R_4O-CO$  group,

a  $C_{2,4}$ -alkyl group which is substituted from position 2 by a hydroxy group,

a  $C_{3,4}$ -cycloalkyl or  $C_{3,4}$ -cycloalkylmethyl group and

$R_4$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

a  $C_{1,6}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_4CO-O-(R_4CR_4)$  group, whilst

$R_5$  denotes a hydrogen atom or a  $C_{1,4}$ -alkyl group,

$R_2$  denotes a hydrogen atom and

$R_3$  denotes a  $C_{1,4}$ -alkyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl,  $C_{1,4}$ -alkoxy, cyclopentyloxy or cyclohexyloxy group,

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an  $R_4O-CO$  or  $R_4O-CO-C_{1,2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_4$  is as hereinbefore defined,

5

- 136 -

10

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by two  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

15

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by the group  $R_{10}$  and additionally at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined and

20

$R_{10}$  denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

25

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_6O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  $(R_6O-PO-R_9)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

30

$R_7$  and  $R_8$ , which may be identical or different, in each case denote a hydrogen atom, a methyl, ethyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-indanyl or  $R_9CO-O-(R_6CR_7)$  group, whilst

$R_8$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

and  $R_9$  denotes a methyl or ethyl group,

35

a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group and is additionally substituted at a cyclic carbon atom by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group wherein  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

40

a morpholino group which is substituted by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

45

a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl, bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl,  $(R_6O-PO-OR_8)$ -methyl or  $(R_6O-PO-R_9)$ -methyl group wherein  $R_6$  to  $R_9$  are as hereinbefore defined,

50

55

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups,

a 2-oxo-morpholinyl group which is substituted in the 4 position by a methyl, ethyl or  $R_4O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_4$  is as hereinbefore defined and the abovementioned 2-oxo-morpholinyl groups are in each case linked to a carbon atom of the group C, or

a  $R_{11}N(C_{1-2}$ -alkyl) group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group,

the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof.

5. Bicyclic heterocycles of general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

$R_a$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_b$  denotes a phenyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_3$ , whilst

$R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom and

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

$R_c$  and  $R_d$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

A denotes an  $-O-C_{1-4}$ -alkylene or  $-O-CH_2-CH(OH)-CH_2$  group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned groups in each case is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

B denotes an  $R_4O-CO-CH_2-NR_5$  group wherein

5  
10  $R_5$  denotes a hydrogen atom or a methyl group which may be substituted by an  $R_4O-CO$  group, or

a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkyl group substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group, and

15  $R_6$  denotes a hydrogen atom, a methyl or ethyl group,

a pyrrolidino or piperidino group which is substituted by an  $R_4O-CO$  group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

20 a piperazino group which is substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_4O-CO-CH_2$  or bis- $(R_4O-CO)-C_{1-3}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

25 a pyrrolidinyl or piperidinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_4O-CO-CH_2$  group, whilst  $R_6$  is as hereinbefore defined,

30 a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by one or two methyl groups, or

35 a  $R_{11}N(C_{1-2}$ -alkyl) group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group, and

40 C and D together denote a methoxy,  $C_{4-6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkylmethoxy group,

the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof.

45 7. Bicyclic heterocycles of general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

$R_8$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

50  $R_9$  denotes a phenyl group wherein the phenyl nucleus is substituted in each case by the groups  $R_1$  to  $R_7$ , whilst

5  
10  $R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which may be identical or different, each denote a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom and

$R_3$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

15  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  in each case denote a hydrogen atom,

X denotes a nitrogen atom,

20 A and B together denote a  $C_{4-6}$ -cycloalkoxy or  $C_{3-6}$ -cycloalkyl-methoxy group,

25 C denotes an  $-O-CH_2CH_2$  group, whilst the oxygen atom of the abovementioned group is linked to the bicyclic heteroaromatic ring,

D denotes an  $R_6O-CO-CH_2-NR_7$  group wherein

30  $R_8$  denotes a  $C_{2-4}$ -alkyl group substituted from position 2 onwards by a hydroxy group, and

35  $R_6$  denotes a methyl or ethyl group,

a 2-oxo-morpholino group which may be substituted by one or two methyl groups, or

40 a  $R_{11}N(C_{1-2}$ -alkyl) group wherein  $R_{11}$  denotes a 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl or 2-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-4-yl group,

the tautomers, stereoisomers and salts thereof.

45 8. The following bicyclic heterocycles of general formula I according to claim 1:

50 (1) 4-(3-chloro-4-fluorophenylamino)-6-{3-[4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-1-piperazinyl]propyloxy}-7-methoxy-quinazoline,



5

- 140 -

10

(2) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline,

15

(3) (S)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-[3-(2-methoxycarbonyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)propyloxy]-7-methoxy-quinazoline,

20

(4) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(3-{4-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-piperazin-1-yl}-2-hydroxy-propyloxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline,

(5) (S)-4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-({1-[(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl]-pyrrolidine-2-yl}methoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline and

25

(6) 4-[(3-bromophenyl)amino]-6-(2-{4-[1,2 bis(methoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-piperazin-1-yl}ethoxy)-7-methoxy-quinazoline

and the salts thereof.

30

9. Physiologically acceptable salts of the compounds according to claims 1 to 8 with inorganic or organic acids of bases.

35

10. Pharmaceutical compositions containing a compound according to claims 1 to 8 or a physiologically acceptable salt according to claim 9 optionally together with one or more inert carriers and/or diluents.

40

11. Use of a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 9 for preparing a pharmaceutical compositions which is suitable for treating benign or malignant tumours, for preventing and treating diseases of the airways and lungs, for treating polyps, diseases of the gastro-intestinal tract, the bile ducts and gall bladder and the kidneys and skin.

45

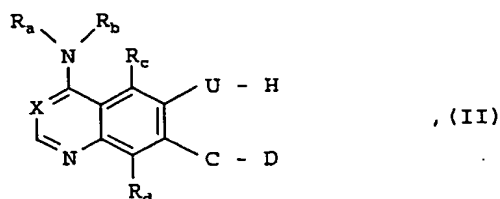
50

12. Process for preparing a pharmaceutical composition according to claim 10, characterised in that a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 9 is incorporated in one or more inert carriers and/or diluents by a non-chemical method.

55

13. Process for preparing the compounds of general formula I according to claims 1 to 9, characterised in that

a) a compound of general formula



wherein

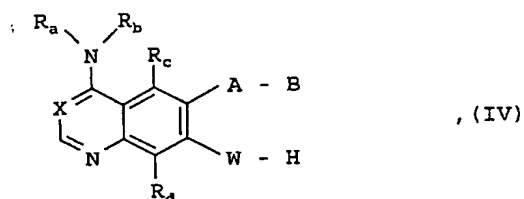
R<sub>a</sub> to R<sub>d</sub>, C, D and X are defined as in claims 1 to 8 and U denotes an oxygen atom or an R<sub>4</sub>N group, whilst R<sub>4</sub> is defined as in claims 1 to 8, is reacted with a compound of general formula



wherein

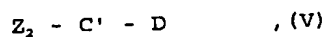
B is defined as in claims 1 to 8, A' denotes one of the optionally substituted alkylene, cycloalkylene, alkylene-cycloalkylene, cycloalkylene-alkylene or alkylene-cycloalkylene-alkylene moieties mentioned in claims 1 to 8 for the group A, which are linked to the heteroaromatic group via an oxygen atom or via an NR<sub>4</sub> group, and Z<sub>1</sub> denotes a leaving group, or

b) a compound of general formula



wherein

$R_a$  to  $R_d$ , A, B and X are defined as in claims 1 to 8 and W denotes an oxygen atom or an  $R_4N$  group, whilst  $R_4$  is defined as in claims 1 to 8, is reacted with a compound of general formula



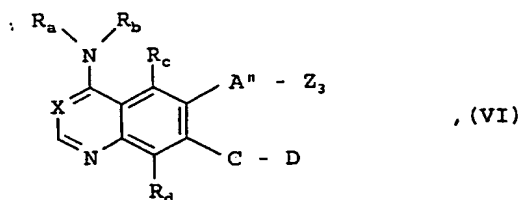
wherein

D is defined as in claims 1 to 8,

C' denotes one of the optionally substituted alkylene, cycloalkylene, alkylene-cycloalkylene, cycloalkylene-alkylene or alkylene-cycloalkylene-alkylene moieties mentioned above for the group C, which are linked to the heteroaromatic group via an oxygen atom or via an  $NR_4$  group, and  $Z_2$  denotes a leaving group, or

c) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein A is defined as in claims 1 to 8 with the exception of the oxygen atom and the  $-NR_4$  group:

a compound of general formula



wherein

20  $R_a$  to  $R_d$ , C, D and X are defined as in claims 1 to 8 and  
 $A''$  has the meanings given for A in claims 1 to 8 with the  
 exception of the oxygen atom and the  $-NR_4$  group and  
 $Z_3$  denotes a leaving group or together with a hydrogen atom of  
 an adjacent hydrocarbon group denotes an oxygen atom, is  
 25 reacted with a compound of general formula

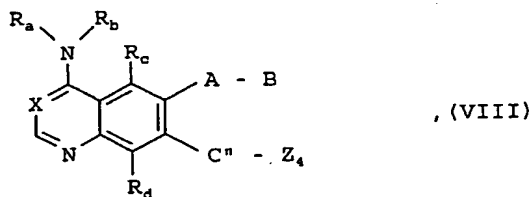


30 wherein

B is defined as in claims 1 to 8, or

35 d) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein  
 C is defined as in claims 1 to 8 with the exception of the  
 oxygen atom and the  $-NR_4$  group:

a compound of general formula



50 wherein

$C''$  has the meanings given for C in claims 1 to 8 with the  
 exception of the oxygen atom and the  $-NR_4$  group and

- 144 -

$Z_4$  denotes a leaving group or together with a hydrogen atom of an adjacent hydrocarbon group denotes an oxygen atom, is reacted with a compound of general formula

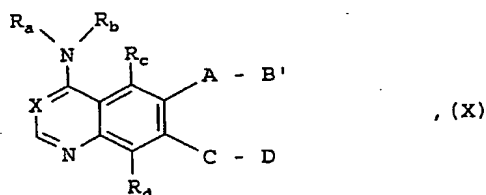


wherein

D is defined as in claims 1 to 8, or

e) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein B denotes an  $R_6O-CO$ -alkylene- $NR_5$  group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, a piperazino or homopiperazino group substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group or a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst in each case  $R_5$  and  $R_6$  are defined as in claims 1 to 8:

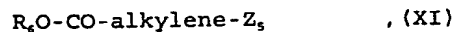
a compound of general formula



wherein

$R_a$  to  $R_d$ , A, C, D and X are defined as in claims 1 to 8 and  $B'$  denotes an  $R_5NH$  group wherein  $R_5$  is defined as in claims 1 to 8, a piperazino or homopiperazino group unsubstituted in the 4 position, a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group unsubstituted in the 1 position, is reacted with a compound of general formula

- 145 -

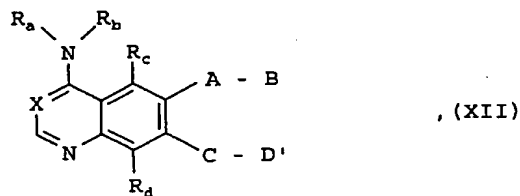


wherein

the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  in each case is defined as in claims 1 to 8, and  $Z_2$  denotes an exchangeable group, or

f) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein D denotes an  $R_6O-CO-alkylene-NR_5$  group wherein the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, a piperazino or homopiperazino group substituted in the 4 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group or a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl group substituted in the 1 position by an  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl or bis- $(R_6O-CO)-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl group, whilst in each case  $R_5$  and  $R_6$  are defined as in claims 1 to 8:

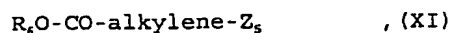
a compound of general formula



wherein

$R_a$  to  $R_d$ , A to C and X are defined as in claims 1 to 8 and  $D'$  denotes an  $R_5NH$  group wherein  $R_5$  is defined as in claims 1 to 8, a piperazino or homopiperazino group unsubstituted in the 4 position, a pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl or hexahydroazepinyl

group unsubstituted in the 1 position, is reacted with a compound of general formula

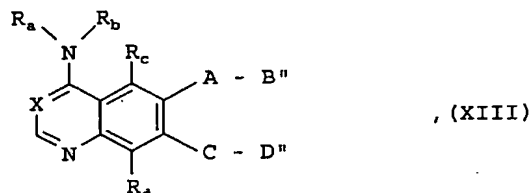


wherein

the alkylene moiety, which is straight-chained and contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms, may additionally be substituted by one or two  $C_{1-2}$ -alkyl groups or by an  $R_6O-CO$  or  $R_6O-CO-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl group, whilst  $R_6$  in each case is defined as in claims 1 to 8, and  $Z_5$  denotes an exchangeable group, or

g) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  denotes a hydrogen atom:

a compound of general formula



wherein

$R_a$  to  $R_d$ , A, C and X are defined as in claims 1 to 8,  $B''$  and  $D''$  have the meanings given for B and D in claims 1 to 8, with the proviso that at least one of the groups  $B''$  or  $D''$  contains an  $R_6O-CO$ ,  $(R_6O-PO-OR_6)$  or  $(R_6O-PO-R_6)$  group wherein  $R_6$  is defined as in claims 1 to 8 and at least one of the groups  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  does not represent a hydrogen atom, is converted by hydrolysis, treating with acids, thermolysis or hydrogenolysis into a compound of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups  $R_6$  to  $R_8$  denotes a hydrogen atom,

and subsequently, if desired, a compound of general formula I thus obtained which contains a carboxy or hydroxyphosphoryl

5

- 147 -

group is converted by esterification into a corresponding ester of general formula I and/or

10

a compound of general formula I thus obtained wherein B or D denotes an optionally substituted N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-glycine or N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-glycine ester group is converted by cyclisation into a corresponding 2-oxo-morpholino compound, and/or

15

if necessary any protecting group used during the reactions described above is cleaved again and/or

20

if desired a compound of general formula I thus obtained is resolved into its stereoisomers and/or

25

a compound of general formula I thus obtained is converted into the salts thereof, more particularly, for pharmaceutical use, into the physiologically acceptable salts thereof.

30

35

40

45

50

55



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.  
PCT/EP 00/02228

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 C07D239/94 C07D215/54 C07D401/12 C07D413/12 C07D405/12  
A61K31/517 A61P35/00

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
IPC 7 C07D A61K A61P

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

CHEM ABS Data

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category * | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages              | Relevant to claim No. |
|------------|---|-----------------------|
| X          | WO 96 33980 A (ZENECA)<br>31 October 1996 (1996-10-31)<br>the whole document                    | 1,8-13                |
| X          | WO 97 30035 A (ZENECA)<br>21 August 1997 (1997-08-21)<br>claims; examples 13,16,22,23           | 1,8-13                |
| X          | WO 97 32856 A (ZENECA)<br>12 September 1997 (1997-09-12)<br>claims; examples 8,9,17-20,24-27    | 1,8-13                |
| X          | WO 98 13354 A (ZENECA)<br>2 April 1998 (1998-04-02)<br>claims; examples 3,4,9,13-15,17-23,37-58 | 1,8-13                |
|            | ---<br>-/--   |                       |

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

### \* Special categories of cited documents:

- \*A\* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- \*L\* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- \*O\* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- \*P\* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- \*T\* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- \*X\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- \*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- \*Z\* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

10 July 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

18/07/2000

Name and mailing address of the ISA  
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-3040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3018

Authorized officer

Francois, J

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/EP 00/02228

| C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT |  |                       |
|--|--|-----------------------|
| Category *   | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
| A  | EP 0 566 226 A (ZENECA)<br>20 October 1993 (1993-10-20)<br>claims                  | 1,9-13                |

1

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (July 1992)

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No  
PCT/EP 00/02228

| Patent document<br>cited in search report | Publication<br>date | Patent family<br>member(s) | Publication<br>date |
|---|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| WO 9633980 A                              | 31-10-1996          | AU 699163 B                | 26-11-1998          |
|   |                     | AU 5343396 A               | 18-11-1996          |
|   |                     | BG 102052 A                | 31-08-1998          |
|   |                     | BR 9608082 A               | 26-01-1999          |
|   |                     | CA 2215732 A               | 31-10-1996          |
|   |                     | CN 1182421 A               | 20-05-1998          |
|   |                     | CZ 9703396 A               | 18-02-1998          |
|   |                     | EP 0823900 A               | 18-02-1998          |
|   |                     | HR 960204 A                | 31-08-1997          |
|   |                     | HU 9802839 A               | 29-03-1999          |
|   |                     | JP 11504033 T              | 06-04-1999          |
|   |                     | NO 974940 A                | 24-10-1997          |
|   |                     | NZ 305444 A                | 29-03-1999          |
|   |                     | PL 323066 A                | 02-03-1998          |
|   |                     | SK 145497 A                | 04-02-1998          |
|   |                     | US 5770599 A               | 23-06-1998          |
|   |                     | ZA 9603358 A               | 28-10-1996          |
| WO 9730035 A                              | 21-08-1997          | AU 719434 B                | 11-05-2000          |
|   |                     | AU 1729097 A               | 02-09-1997          |
|   |                     | BR 9707495 A               | 27-07-1999          |
|   |                     | CA 2242425 A               | 21-08-1997          |
|   |                     | CN 1211239 A               | 17-03-1999          |
|   |                     | CZ 9802535 A               | 11-11-1998          |
|   |                     | EP 0880508 A               | 02-12-1998          |
|   |                     | HU 9901155 A               | 28-07-1999          |
|   |                     | NO 983687 A                | 13-08-1998          |
|   |                     | PL 328310 A                | 18-01-1999          |
|   |                     | SK 108798 A                | 11-01-1999          |
| WO 9732856 A                              | 12-09-1997          | AU 719327 B                | 04-05-2000          |
|   |                     | AU 1866497 A               | 22-09-1997          |
|   |                     | CA 2244897 A               | 12-09-1997          |
|   |                     | CN 1212684 A               | 31-03-1999          |
|   |                     | EP 0885198 A               | 23-12-1998          |
|   |                     | NO 984085 A                | 04-09-1998          |
|   |                     | ZA 9701747 A               | 27-08-1998          |
| WO 9813354 A                              | 02-04-1998          | AU 4561397 A               | 17-04-1998          |
|   |                     | CN 1231662 A               | 13-10-1999          |
|   |                     | CZ 9901039 A               | 16-06-1999          |
|   |                     | EP 0929530 A               | 21-07-1999          |
|   |                     | NO 991422 A                | 24-03-1999          |
|   |                     | PL 332385 A                | 13-09-1999          |
|   |                     | SK 38999 A                 | 08-10-1999          |
|   |                     | HU 9902850 A               | 28-04-2000          |
| EP 566226 A                               | 20-10-1993          | AT 130000 T                | 15-11-1995          |
|   |                     | AU 661533 B                | 27-07-1995          |
|   |                     | AU 3101093 A               | 22-07-1993          |
|   |                     | CA 2086968 A,C             | 21-07-1993          |
|   |                     | CZ 282038 B                | 16-04-1997          |
|   |                     | DE 69300754 D              | 14-12-1995          |
|   |                     | DE 69300754 T              | 28-03-1996          |
|   |                     | DK 566226 T                | 18-03-1996          |
|   |                     | ES 2078798 T               | 16-12-1995          |
|   |                     | FI 930208 A                | 21-07-1993          |
|   |                     | GR 3018143 T               | 29-02-1996          |

Form PCT/ISA/210 (patent family annex) (July 1992)

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Int. Appl. No.  
PCT/EP 00/02228

| Patent document<br>cited in search report | Publication<br>date | Patent family<br>member(s) | Publication<br>date |
|---|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| EP 566226 A                               |                     | HK 36497 A                 | 04-04-1997          |
|   |                     | HU 63153 A                 | 28-07-1993          |
|   |                     | HU 9500185 A               | 28-07-1995          |
|   |                     | MX 9300277 A               | 30-06-1994          |
|   |                     | NO 301541 B                | 10-11-1997          |
|   |                     | NZ 245662 A                | 26-09-1995          |
|   |                     | RU 2127263 C               | 10-03-1999          |
|   |                     | SK 1693 A                  | 09-09-1993          |
|   |                     | US 5457105 A               | 10-10-1995          |
|   |                     | US 5616582 A               | 01-04-1997          |
|   |                     | ZA 9300015 A               | 20-07-1993          |
|   |                     | JP 2994165 B               | 27-12-1999          |
|   |                     | JP 6073025 A               | 15-03-1994          |